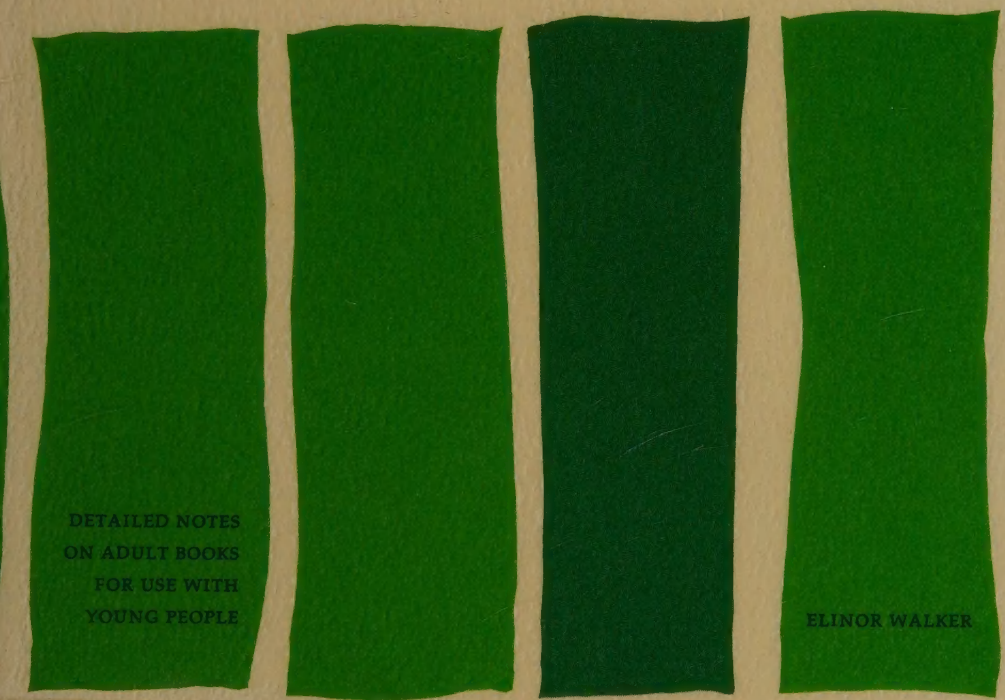

Doors to more mature reading

second edition

Doors to more mature reading

Detailed notes on adult books
for use with young people

Doors to more mature reading

second edition

Elinor Walker

American Library Association
Chicago 1981

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Walker, Elinor.
Doors to more mature reading.

Includes index.
1. Bibliography—Best books. 2. Youth—Books and reading—Bibliography. 3. English literature—History and criticism—Abstracts. I. Title.
Z1035.A1W33 1981 011'.7 81-17615
ISBN 0-8389-0344-4 AACR2

Printed in the United States of America.

Contents

Preface

This second edition of *Doors to More Mature Reading* has been compiled for librarians, teachers, parents, and other adults who are enthusiastic about introducing really good readers among teenagers to books that are worth the time spent in reading them. The books chosen are not the easy adult titles that can be read at one sitting. Many are long, but because they are so fascinating, they cannot easily be put down. These books include some novels, history, biography, travel, plays, and miscellaneous nonfiction; many are classics. Their selection has required my reading or rereading hundreds of titles to find the adult books that bring challenges to young people, that open new vistas, that stimulate their imaginations, that bring them encounters with different historical periods and varied life styles, that may deepen their appreciation of language, truth, beauty, and life itself. Because teenagers who are reading mature books are thinking people, titles about different types of problems have been included. The choice of books has been based on value, not on date of publication.

Doors to More Mature Reading is a gateway through which adults working with teenagers can explore with them many fields of information, adventure, ideals, and romance. No effort has been made to make this a balanced list. Because these books were selected for mature readers, rough language and sex scenes have not always been commented upon in annotations, long or short. Adults will recognize the fact that in modern writing such things are almost taken for granted, however unfortunate that may be. Books are unusual if they do not have either.

In selecting books for this list, titles which give the impression that the seamy side of life is attractive have been avoided. Realism is essential, but one must acknowledge that it has two faces, not merely one. Integrity, loyalty, consideration, purity, fidelity, generosity, and kindness are also real. Because so many writers are interested only in appealing to a reader's less admirable inclinations, it was not easy to find books which do not glamorize the negative in realism.

Young people are naturally idealistic. However, the world throws at them via the print and nonprint media examples of depravity, corruption, cruelty, vandalism, greed, and self-aggrandizement, since these subjects are considered newsworthy. With no other view of the world before them some young people may lose their rosy view of life early and succumb to drugs, perversion, crime, discouragement, listlessness, frustration, even suicide. Others who live in a different environment are not so easily misled, but they too are vulnerable. Still others never lose their ideals and work hard to improve the world around them. Librarians and teachers can do much to help young people keep their ideals, if only they will try. They can emulate the superintendent's wife in *Manchild in the Promised Land* who, recognizing the potential in Claude Brown, introduced him to the great people in good books and helped him decide to try to make the most of that potential.

When I began to work on the revision of *Doors to More Mature Reading*, I asked librarians if they could put me in touch with teenagers who were really good readers, for I like to talk with young people and get their ideas about the books they are reading. In one instance a librarian gave me several names and telephone numbers. I set up an appointment at the library with these young people, girls who were eleventh graders. In just a few minutes I discovered that these teenagers were still reading books from the Children's Room and from the cheap romance paperback rack. In questioning them I found that they had been unable to find any good books on the adult shelves. Whose fault was that?

The fact that young people go out of the library with arms loaded with books does not make them good readers. These girls were extremely poor, immature readers for eleventh graders. Obviously no teacher, librarian, or parent had ever introduced them to good *adult* books, even the easier ones listed in *Book Bait*.[1]

Many librarians have told me that today's teenagers are not reading as much as their predecessors did. If this is true, I am thoroughly convinced that the adults with whom these young people are associated are at fault. Few children can resist reading the books to which they are introduced at story hours. Having given talks in hundreds of classes in junior and senior high schools and having taken with me copies of the books about which I was planning to speak, I know with what eagerness the books were borrowed at the end of the talks. I also have known teachers who encouraged reading because they talked enthusiastically about books with their students. Although some schools are endeavoring to encourage their students not only to read but also to improve the quality of their reading, more teachers and librarians, knowledgeable and excited about good

1. Elinor Walker, comp., *Book Bait*, 3rd ed. (Chicago: American Library Assn., 1979). 172 pp.

books, must be recruited for such programs in more schools. Public librarians must be allowed time to develop reading programs with teenagers and to work on the floor with individuals who ask for and welcome suggestions, especially since librarians are uniquely qualified by training and inclination to bring young people and good books together. *Doors to More Mature Reading* was designed to provide a tool to facilitate this process.

I know from experience that when national, state, and local library organizations have planned meetings about adult books appropriate for use with teenage readers, those have been standing-room-only meetings. People have even given up their free time to attend and learn more about the books in their collections that teens will read for enjoyment, entertainment, and intellectual stimulation.

As in the first edition, the books are listed alphabetically by author's name, followed by the title, then the publisher and the date of publication. However, the date of first publication for a classic is given in brackets after the title, usually without the name of a publisher, since there may be more than one presently reissuing the book. Twenty-nine titles have been retained from the first edition of *Doors to More Mature Reading*. Four titles also were picked up from the second edition of *Book Bait* because librarians thought these were too difficult for younger readers or would be more meaningful to older readers. The remaining titles are new to this edition.

The annotations in *Doors to More Mature Reading* are long and attempt to give the flavor of each book in the expectation that the librarian, teacher, or other interested adult will gain a working acquaintance with the books until able to acquire a firsthand knowledge by reading them. The second paragraph comments on the good points of the book and mentions any weaknesses. The third paragraph supplies the pages or chapters useful for preparing a book talk. The final paragraph suggests other books by the same author, books on the same subject, or books related in one way or another. Some of these follow-up titles also may have been listed in *Book Bait*. They are used in this compilation since they not only tie in so well with the titles listed here, but also because the young person may not have been introduced to them earlier. An asterisk on a follow-up title indicates that a long annotation appears on another page. Some topic, name, or event mentioned in a book often prompts a reader to ask for additional information and where these have been noted, a follow-up title has been suggested.

A few titles are out of print in their original editions, but most may still be found on library shelves or are available in paperback editions. When librarians and teachers find that they cannot obtain additional copies of an out-of-print title, they should write to the publisher, stating that they have a demand for the book and would like to have it reprinted. Publishers say that otherwise they have no way of knowing how great the need for a reprint might be. Do you

know, for example, that *Drums Along the Mohawk* is out of print at this writing? How can any library get along without that book?

Acknowledgment is gratefully made to the following persons who helped me in various ways while I was revising this book:

St. Louis Park Public Library staff for securing so many books for me, especially Holly McDonnell for putting me in touch with teachers and librarians who read widely and well.

Barbara Smigala and Lyle Girard, teachers, and Toni Heinen, librarian, St. Louis Park High School, St. Louis Park, Minnesota.

David Krishef, student, St. Louis Park (Minn.) High School.

Barbara Andersen, professor, English Department, Augsburg College, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Margaret Burrow and Ruth Kuhn, teachers, and Peggy Darland, librarian, Crestwood High School, Cresco, Iowa.

Linda Waddle, librarian, high school, Cedar Falls, Iowa.

Lillian Shapiro, school library consultant, formerly Supervisor of Senior High School Libraries, New York City Board of Education.

Elizabeth Keen, Young Adult Coordinator, Free Library, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

Rosemary Young, Coordinator of Young Adult Services, and her staff, Public Library, Denver, Colorado.

Margaret Scanlin, formerly on my staff at Carnegie Library, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.

Mary K. Chelton, an editor for Voice of Youth Advocates, Tuscaloosa, Alabama.

Barbara Duree, Sally Estes, and Stephanie Zvirin of *Booklist*, American Library Association, Chicago, Illinois.

Jack Rowe, Chairman of English Department, Orme School, Mayer, Arizona.

Jeanne Gelinas, librarian, Public Library, Golden Valley, Minnesota.

Sara L. Siebert, formerly Coordinator of Young Adult Services, Enoch Pratt Free Library, Baltimore, Maryland.

Doors to more mature reading

ADAMS, RICHARD

Watership Down

1972. Macmillan.

One day Fiver, a very small rabbit who had second sight, warned the Chief Rabbit that an unknown danger was imminent and that everyone should leave the warren. Although the Chief Rabbit ignored him, his brother Hazel and nine other buck rabbits joined Fiver when he left. Rabbits are not accustomed to traveling long distances, so they tired easily. Then Dandelion, who was their best storyteller, told his stories, which always made them feel better because they were usually concerned with El-ahrairh, the rabbit folk-hero who almost always was successful in anything he undertook. After many scary adventures, one day they met a very large, well-groomed rabbit named Cowslip. He invited them to come to his warren which had plenty of space. They accepted but soon found there was something about these new rabbits that they did not like. Not only were they rather melancholy, they did not want to answer questions. A nearby farmer put out food for them which the rabbits carried off to their warren. Fiver disapproved because he thought they were acting too much like squirrels. One day when Bigwig got caught in a wire trap, the visitors realized that other rabbits had disappeared from time to time without explanation, which meant they had probably been trapped too. After his friends managed to get Bigwig loose, they all left the warren. When they reached Watership Down, Fiver said they should cross to the slope on the other side and build a new warren. The bucks were not happy about this because digging was women's work. However, since there were no does with them and they needed protection, they dug. One day the rabbits found Kehaar, a black-headed gull with an injured wing. At first Kehaar was not friendly, but when the rabbits began bringing him worms and beetles, he warmed up. The rabbits soon realized they had to have some does and when Kehaar was able to fly, he found another warren called Efrafa. Four rabbits left Watership Down to see if Efrafa had some extra does. After a long time the four returned alone and in bad shape. Hazel decided to see what he could do to get does

from Efrafa, and Kehaar offered to help. Efrafa's Chief Rabbit, Captain Woundwort, was a very strong dictator with a well-trained staff and police force. With Kehaar's help the rabbits managed to reach a punt on the riverbank with some does who had come willingly. Hazel chewed through the rope that held the boat and it took off down the river with the whole party. The author tells how they got back to the warren and later had to defend it from an attack by a strong force from Efrafa. They might have been destroyed if Hazel had not thought of a way to get outside help. Captain Woundwort was badly wounded, but he disappeared after the battle. The rabbit who took his place at Efrafa was less militant and the two warrens got along fine after that.

In the book, which was carefully written, the rabbits speak English, using a number of unfamiliar words that are explained both in the text and in a glossary. Having a language (Lapine) of their own makes them different from other animals and men. Kehaar too speaks a kind of dialect. The author has created a number of real personalities among the rabbits, giving them a certain amount of common sense. He has not allowed them, for the most part, to possess unnatural skills or to engage in unnatural activities. Young people have really liked the book and have recommended it to their friends.

For a book talk use the episode in which Bigwig gets caught in the trap and his friends realize that Fiver was right about wanting to leave, saying that they were closer to death than he was, pages 97–106.

In *Plague Dogs,* another book by Adams, two dogs who escape from an experimental station run by the British government are taught how to survive as wild animals by a fox, are hunted down by soldiers and farmers whose sheep they have killed, and are eventually taken in by a kind man who likes dogs. Also suggest *Dunction Wood* by William Horwood. This is a very long allegorical story about a number of moles from several sets of burrows who have been tyrannized by a large, powerful mole named Mandrake and his vicious henchmen. Bracken, a young mole forced from his family and community, retreats to a system of burrows once inhabited by ancestors. Eventually he joins forces with the lovely Rebecca, Mandrake's daughter, and with Boswell, from the religious community of Uffington, to overthrow the evil leaders and restore the old principles and harmony.

ARNOW, HARRIETTE

The Dollmaker

1954. Macmillan.

2 During World War II when so many men had joined the armed forces, defense plants were pleading for workers. Families from the

South, black and white, streamed north to cities where jobs were plentiful. To meet the problems of housing these hordes, the government built rows of cheap barracklike buildings with small rooms and cardboard walls. It was to one of these apartments that Gertie Nevels brought her five children from Kentucky to join Clovis, her handyman husband who had come to Detroit several weeks earlier, found work, rented the apartment, and bought some furnishings. For years Gertie had saved money with the intention of buying a small plot of ground with some buildings on it. She could see that her family's fortunes would be improved by this move. She had just enough money and was making the deal when Clovis sent for her. Her mother convinced her that her place was with her husband; therefore, the family had taken the train north. Their new quarters contained a gas stove, an electric refrigerator, and a bathroom, all new to this mountain family. Gertie was a big woman and she found the quarters hardly big enough to turn around in. She was horrified to learn that the furnishings and the old car Clovis drove had been bought on time. The Nevels spoke a definite dialect, as did many of their neighbors. Having lived in an isolated area they were quite ignorant of modern life and language. Many of the women worked, but Gertie had time on her hands. She had always been a whittler and to keep herself busy, she began to carve. A Catholic neighbor asked her to make a crucifix for his mother. As a result Gertie made several carvings and was well paid for them. She had brought with her a huge block of cherry wood that she had begun to carve before she left Kentucky. During her years in Detroit she worked on it off and on. The author tells about all the neighbors, their activities and problems, and how they affected the Nevels. Cassie had always had an imaginary playmate, Callie Lou, to whom she talked. The neighbor children teased her and one neighbor whose husband was studying psychology advised Gertie to get rid of Callie Lou as soon as possible. Cassie stopped playing with Callie Lou indoors but she still talked to her out-of-doors. This led to the saddest part of the book. Cassie was run over by a train while finding a safe place for Callie Lou to stay. It took more than Gertie's savings to pay for the funeral. Corrupt police and funeral directors took advantage of people ignorant of modern life. The unions caused a lot of trouble in the plants and Clovis had had to join one. This caused Gertie much worry. After the war more union trouble made Gertie with her wood carving the main support of the family, but it was a hand-to-mouth existence. The story ends with the family still in Detroit, hoping to get enough money to go back to Kentucky. But the reader wonders if they ever will.

The characters in this book are very well drawn. All were leading very trying lives. Husbands and wives often worked different shifts and some had to sleep daytimes. The noise of the children, low-flying planes, the nearby railyards, and the thinness of the walls

made sleep difficult and people irritable. Terrible heat in the summer and air contaminated by unvented stoves in the winter added to their discomfort. The neighbors might bicker over their children's fights and rights, but let an emergency arise and the atmosphere changed. Everyone was helpful and considerate. Gertie was often inarticulate but most people admired her and came to her with their problems. Often she could not help but she was a good listener. The reader will find her an unforgettable character.

The first episode in the book would be a good introduction to Gertie Nevels. When Amos was a baby, he had what may have been diphtheria. The way in which Gertie managed to get him to a doctor is almost unbelievable, but typical of her drive.

Although there are dozens of books written about World War II, there is nothing about the home front during the war that begins to approach the quality of *The Dollmaker*. Therefore no follow-up is suggested.

ASIMOV, ISAAC

Foundation

1951. Doubleday.

Dean in the field of psychohistory, Hari Seldon, using mathematics and his calculator, predicted the fall of the first Galactic Empire within five centuries of the time in which he spoke. He saw all its faults, the direction in which it was heading, and the inevitable result. Because his prediction did not please the Commission of Public Safety on the planet of Trantor, he was arrested and brought to trial. According to Dr. Seldon's testimony under questioning, the dark ages which would follow the downfall would last thirty thousand years. He stated that the knowledge which his staff was preserving in his encyclopedias would enable civilization to make a quicker comeback. He cleverly inveigled the Commission into "forcing" him into exile with his staff of 30,000 men and their families. Dr. Seldon died a year or so after the move to the uninhabited planet called Terminus at the very edge of the Galaxy, but his staff continued to work. As the years passed, the population grew to over a million, with the majority of the people having no interest in the Foundation's project. They were concerned that their homes, farms, and factories be protected from aggressors from nearby Anacreon. Salvor Hardin, mayor of Terminus City, was foresighted enough to see a solution to their problem. Fifty years after Dr. Seldon's death, his vault was to be opened. When this happened, a videotape showed Dr. Seldon who told those assembled that the time of the encyclopediasts was at an end. Their work had been only a fraudu-

lent excuse to get them moved to their present location. He predicted a series of crises and foretold the present one. The solution, he said, was obvious, and it was the one Hardin had suggested. Dr. Seldon expected the descendants of his group to establish another Galactic Empire. The second crisis he had predicted came thirty years later and concerned a revolt within Terminus. Hardin once more worked out of a ticklish situation, being proclaimed the planet's savior. In time traders became important at the Foundation's end of the Galaxy. Terminus had no natural resources of its own, but it had scientific knowledge and atomic power. Its traders offered atomic gadgets for the valuable minerals it lacked. They grew rich and with wealth came power. The powerful religious group that Hardin had set up in order to control the atomic power lent to neighboring kingdoms had served its purpose. Now it was declining as the new group with money power took over. Fortunately with every crisis there was someone who assumed control and found a solution.

Professional critics have differed in their reaction to this book. Although they agree that the story is well written and carefully thought out, some think there is too little action. However, young people interested in science fiction recommend this book highly.

The episode in which Gaal Dornick, a recent graduate with a doctorate in mathematics, has been offered a job on Trantor with the mysterious Seldon Project, can be used to introduce this book, the first of a trilogy. His first meeting with Dr. Seldon establishes the background of the story, pages 14–17. If the book talker wishes, some of Dr. Seldon's trial and the meeting with the Commission can be added, pages 22–32.

The second book of the trilogy is *Foundation and Empire* in which both the Empire and the Foundation are destroyed by a mutant called the Mule who can reach into people's minds and control them. Attention is turning to the Second Foundation supposedly at the edge of the galaxy opposite to Foundation, and the Mule expects to defeat it also. In the third book, *Second Foundation*, no one knows where the Second Foundation is and searches for it are conducted. Scientists slowly realize that the minds of some of their colleagues are being manipulated by Second Foundation and that people from there have infiltrated important groups in the galaxy. A few individuals finally realize that Second Foundation has always been at Trantor. Another science fiction story with some similarities is *A Canticle for Leibowitz* by Walter M. Miller. The men at the Abbey of the Albertian Order of Leibowitz have preserved all the information they could gather from the days before most of the world was destroyed from fallout from nuclear weapons. Centuries pass as mankind gradually makes a comeback. Eventually a scientist comes looking for information and carries away with him the secrets that will lead to another holocaust.

AUSTEN, JANE

Pride and Prejudice

[1813]

This comedy of manners revolves about the Bennett family in eighteenth-century rural England. The principal aim of Mrs. Bennett's life was to find husbands, preferably wealthy ones, for her five daughters. The fun started when a well-to-do bachelor, Mr. Bingley, moved to Netherfield, a property near the Bennetts. At the first ball of the season he was attracted to Jane, the eldest and most beautiful Bennett daughter. He danced with her twice and in the following weeks paid her much attention. Through him Elizabeth, the cleverest sister and real heroine of the book, met Mr. Darcy, an eligible and even wealthier young man. She thought him unbearably proud and arrogant; in fact, the whole community held much the same opinion of him. Mr. Darcy considered the chattering Mrs. Bennett and her three giddy, younger daughters unspeakable; but against his will he was intrigued with Elizabeth. To save himself and Mr. Bingley from unfortunate marriages, he invented a reason for their leaving Netherfield. Later, when he was visiting his aunt, Lady Catherine, he again was in Elizabeth's company because she was also a guest in the neighborhood. Their further acquaintance prompted his proposal of marriage, but unfortunately he let her know that he considered her inferior to himself. Although Elizabeth would never have accepted him anyway, she refused him in even harsher terms because she thought him responsible for Jane's broken romance with Mr. Bingley. Mr. Darcy admitted that he had engineered the departure from Netherfield, but he claimed he did not suspect that Jane was seriously interested in his friend. As time went on, Elizabeth learned things about Darcy that caused her to wonder if she had misjudged him. At their next meeting he seemed like a changed man, thoughtful and considerate instead of overbearing. At last, she realized that she loved him, and she feared he would never propose a second time. Eventually, however, both Jane and Elizabeth were happily married. Other characters who add immeasurably to the story are Mr. Bennett with his sense of humor, his level head, and wit; Mr. Collins, a pompous clergyman who had wanted to marry Elizabeth but who, three days after her refusal, secured the hand of her best friend; domineering Lady Catherine, who failed to marry her daughter to Mr. Darcy; and frivolous Lydia Bennett, who eloped with a scoundrel.

This book appeals to girls whose experience in reading has prepared them to appreciate this leisurely tale. It is an excellent picture of the foibles of society at the time in which Miss Austen lived. She pokes fun at sentimentality, vulgarity, courtship, marriage, and, of course, pride and prejudice. The story emphasizes that one should

not judge from appearances or first impressions, for these can be wrong.

Chapter I makes a good introduction for a book talk because in it Mr. Bennett is really teasing his wife, although she thinks he is serious, about his calling on the new neighbor, Mr. Bingley, and telling him that he has five marriageable daughters and that he can have any one of them he chooses. This gives the speaker a chance to emphasize the fun in the story while mentioning that the book is detailed and somewhat slow moving.

The following three highly entertaining titles by Jane Austen can also be recommended. In *Emma* we discover a young woman whose greatest amusement is matchmaking although she never gives a thought to finding a husband for herself. One of her romantic schemes backfires and she finds herself pursued. *Sense and Sensibility* is another family story of daughters for whom husbands must be found. In *Northanger Abbey* Catherine Morland develops an interest in a young clergyman but a spiteful suitor and his scheming sister try to keep them apart. *The Watsons*, drafted by Jane Austen and finished in recent years by John Coates, tells of a poor English family who allowed Emily, one of their four daughters, to be adopted by wealthy relatives when she was a baby. Through this sister all the girls made happy marriages when they grew up. A young person who is devoted to Jane Austen will probably enjoy David Cecil's *A Portrait of Jane Austen.* Although not much is known about her, Cecil makes the most of what he was able to glean. Anthony Trollope has a delightful sense of humor and an eye for detail similar to Jane Austen's. His *Barchester Towers* records the rivalries, the tumult, the strategies, and the ultimatums which occur when henpecked Dr. Proudie from London is appointed bishop for Barchester Cathedral and his chaplain, the Reverend Mr. Slope, mightily offends all the clergy of the area with his first sermon. To add to the fun there are several well-to-do eligible young women in the city and Mr. Slope sets out to strengthen his position by a marriage with one of them.

BALDWIN, JAMES

If Beale Street Could Talk

1974. Dial.

Tish and Fonny had been friends almost all their lives, though he was three years older than she. When they were around twenty, they found themselves very much in love and decided to be married, but it took quite a time before they could find a loft suitable not only for Fonny's hobby of sculpturing but to live in. Also the fact that they were blacks weighed against their renting. Shortly after Tish learned she was pregnant, Fonny was arrested and put in jail, thus postpon-

ing their marriage. Tish's mother, father, and older sister and Fonny's father immediately rallied around the engaged couple, but Fonny's mother and his two sisters would have nothing to do with them. Fonny was accused of raping a Puerto Rican girl, although he had been nowhere near the area. The girl, who had not seen her assailant clearly, knew he was black and picked Fonny out of a police lineup because he was the only dark black man there. To pay for Fonny's defense, the two fathers began stealing on the job in order to augment their wages. Ernestine, Tish's sister, moonlighted and Tish and her mother also worked. A young white attorney, who at first was not particularly interested in the case, upon realizing the power and enmity of the district attorney's office, became angry and did his best to circumvent the opposition and get a fair trial for Fonny. The story ends without actually telling whether or not Fonny was freed.

The frequent obscenities encountered in the book are outweighed by the accurate picture of Harlem and the elements of the story itself. Presented here are a touching love story in which the sex scenes are quite explicit and the tragedy of wrongful imprisonment. The devotion and loyalty of the family are especially noteworthy. The story has been very popular with teenage readers.

It is probably best to introduce the book to the individual teenager with whom the librarian is familiar.

Also suggest *A Raisin in the Sun* by Lorraine Hansberry in which a black family living in a shabby, cramped flat on Chicago's south side are revitalized, not by the sudden windfall of a life insurance settlement, but by mutual love and the understanding of each member's dreams and responsibilities. In *Let the Lion Eat Straw* by Ellease Southerland, Abeba Williams gave up what might have been a promising career in music to marry Daniel Torch, only to learn that he was mentally unstable and needed her strong hand to help him weather the blows which drove him insane. She grows as she helps him in every comeback but dies young from too much childbearing.

BALZAC, HONORÉ DE

Eugénie Grandet

[1833]

At the age of twenty-three, it appeared to Eugénie that strict economies of food, heat, and clothing were necessary for what she assumed was a family of moderate means. The demure, naive girl had no real understanding of her father's extensive wealth, some of which he kept in a locked room where he could gloat over it privately. While the townsfolk of Saumur gossiped about the incredibly sly financier and the monetary prize represented by his daughter, Eugénie and her meek mother led almost cloistered lives, interrupted only by occasional visits from prospective suitors and their envious

families. Although accepting frugality for herself, Eugénie was not willing to impose it upon Charles Grandet, her handsome cousin, who appeared unexpectedly from Paris to visit his provincial relatives and won the affection of the gentle Eugénie. Awed by his poise and beautiful clothes, Eugénie managed to provide a real wax candle for his room and schemed to get extra eggs, sugar, and other luxuries for his menu. When it became known that Charles's father had committed suicide rather than face bankruptcy, the young man grieved. Fearing that Charles might win his daughter's hand and seizing the opportunity to make more money by manipulating his dead brother's losses, old Grandet, in an outwardly generous gesture, financed Charles's passage to the Indies, where he might make a fortune. When Grandet learned that Eugénie had given her cousin a large sum in gold accumulated from gifts received over the years, the old man demonstrated the extent of his monomania by reducing her rations to bread and water—an action which scandalized the community and led to his wife's premature death. In time Eugénie learned to manage the vast financial holdings and upon her father's death assumed control of the estate. Her hope to marry Charles was shattered by his fickleness, and a brief marriage to a longtime suitor left Eugénie widowed at thirty-three. She became a recluse living on rationed food and fuel; only by giving money to charity was she able to undo some of the mischief begun by her father.

A good introduction to the realism and satire typical of Balzac's writing, this melodramatic novel appeals to older girls who want a "story to weep over."

In the first few pages the reader gains a good idea of M. Grandet's stinginess through Balzac's description of the family's dingy, threadbare parlor in which they spent much of their time. A little farther on there is a description of Mme. Grandet, more about M. Grandet's miserliness, and a description of Eugénie's birthday celebration. Part of this can be used in a book talk.

The young reader will find in *Père Goriot* by Balzac quite a different story. Jean-Joachim Goriot did everything for his two daughters so that they might marry well and be happy, but in doing this he impoverished himself. The girls did not show their appreciation and when their father died, they did not even contribute toward his burial. Young friends living at the boardinghouse where Goriot had lived paid for his interment. Young people will enjoy *The Miser*, the rather ridiculous but very entertaining comedy by Jean Baptiste Molière. Harpagon, the miser, is father of a son, Cléante, and Élise, a daughter. Both young people are secretly in love. Thinking that Marianne is an heiress, Harpagon is determined to marry her although he learns Cléante is in love with her. Valère, the steward, whom Élise loves, turns out to be the son of a wealthy Italian nobleman. When Harpagon's treasure disappears, Cléante promises to return it to him if he will consent to his and Élise's marriages. Needless to say, he does.

BARTHEL, JOAN

A Death in Canaan

1976. Dutton.

CONNERY, DONALD S.

Guilty until Proven Innocent

1977. Putnam.

Barbara Gibbons moved to a small house in Canaan, Connecticut, when her son, Peter Reilly, was about eleven. Peter made many friends in the village, but a number of people thought his mother was queer and did not like her. When Peter was eighteen, he came home about 9:50 one night from a meeting at the Methodist church to find his almost naked mother lying in a pool of blood on the bedroom floor. He immediately telephoned his friends, the Madows. Mickey, father of the family, drove an ambulance. Peter was told to call the family doctor. The person who answered the doctor's phone told Peter that the man was not home and that he should call the Sharon Hospital Emergency Room. After that call Peter went out of doors to wait for someone to come. Mickey Madow called the police from the ambulance en route to Peter. While the police and the medical examiner were busy in the house and neighborhood, Peter sat in a police cruiser with a rookie officer who took down his account of his afternoon and evening activities, which he then signed. After Peter was examined at a neighbor's house and Lt. Shay found no injuries on his body, the boy was taken back to the cruiser. Mickey waited to take Peter home with him. About two on Saturday morning Shay sent Peter to the barracks and told Mickey to go home, promising to bring Peter in less than an hour. Although dazed and sleepy, the boy wanted to cooperate with the police. Knowing he was innocent, he saw no need to ask for a lawyer and even volunteered to take a lie detector test. The police kept Peter for twenty-four hours, questioning him off and on and steadily suggesting to him that he had killed his mother in a fit of anger, then blacked out. Exhausted, Peter began to think maybe he had murdered his mother. In the end he signed a confession to that effect but saying at the same time, "I don't think I did it." When his friends learned on Sunday that he had been arrested and taken to jail, they refused to believe that Peter was guilty and immediately formed a defense committee to help the boy. Obtaining the services of a well-known local lawyer, a woman, they set about raising money for his defense. At the arraignment the judge set the bail at $50,000 and Peter went back to jail. Barthel, who lived in nearby Litchfield, and was a reporter for *New Times*, called her editor. Learning that he was interested in the story, Joan began to gather facts. The story she wrote aroused people all over the United
10 States and money began to come in. A woman in New York called to

see how much the committee needed and sent a check for $44,000. After four months and three weeks in jail, Peter was allowed to go to live with the Madows until his trial. Although everyone was sure he would be acquitted, he was not. However, his supporters never stopped working for him. With their help Peter was again bailed out and before long another lawyer, working with a detective, came up with new evidence and asked for a new trial. At the hearing the judge decided that the decision at the first trial had been unjust and declared it a mistrial. It took another year and a new prosecuting attorney before the boy was finally cleared.

Joan Barthel was on the spot from very early in the case, was accepted in court as a reporter, and became deeply involved in helping Peter. Near the beginning of her book she has included a transcription of all the tapes made when the police were questioning the boy. These ninety-one pages show clearly how the police led Peter to a confession. Barthel has written carefully and feelingly and gives the reader an inside picture of Peter's experiences in jail and with his friends and supporters.

Connery, a reporter and writer for many years, also lived near the scene of the murder and trial but did not become interested in the case at the start. His younger daughters were Peter's classmates and the boy and his friends were sometimes at the Connery home. Connery did not believe in Peter's innocence at first, but when he did become convinced, he offered to tell Peter's story, giving the boy half of his royalties from the book and from the movie to follow. His book is a little longer than Barthel's because he quotes often from the tapes and describes in greater detail the personalities of Barbara Gibbons, Peter's many friends, his relatives, his godmother, the lawyers, and the police. He also discusses the wrangling and the cover-up tactics of the Connecticut judges and attorneys before Peter was finally cleared, whereas Barthel's book stops after the mistrial decision. The two books are written from somewhat different viewpoints, Barthel's being more objective than Connery's. Anyone vitally interested can read both without becoming bored.

Young people, many of whom are idealistic, should be alerted to the dangers suggested in both books and in the follow-ups. As citizens they should learn what is happening in the courts of their communities and endeavor to bring about changes when these are necessary. There is material for discussion in all these books, and an opportunity for young people to hear guest speakers and to visit the court can be offered by a librarian or teacher.

Peter's statement to the police on that fatal night will be enough of a book talk to interest readers. See pages 25–26 in Barthel and pages 34–35 in Connery.

In the novel *One Just Man* James Mills shows what can happen when plea bargaining takes over the judicial system and justice is

allowed to be crowded out by an inadequate court system, lazy judges and attorneys, and an indifferent public. *The Magician* by Sol Stein is another story about teenagers and the justice system which has been very popular with young people. Urek, a mentally unbalanced boy and leader of a gang of ruffians, attacked and badly injured Ed, a teenage magician, because he refused to give away the secrets of his magic tricks. Thomassy, a very successful lawyer, was able to intimidate witnesses and get Urek free. Ed learned karate in order to defend himself because Urek still threatened him. Urek died in a confrontation with Ed and it is ironic that Ed's father called Thomassy to defend his son.

BEACH, EDWARD L.

Dust on the Sea

1972. Holt.

When Commander "Rich" Richardson and the crew of U.S.S. *Eel* returned to Pearl Harbor for refitting after two months' patrol in the Pacific during World War II, Richardson learned that the *Eel* and two other subs, *Chicolar* and *Whitefish*, under the command of his former skipper, Commodore Joe Blunt, would sail for the East China and Yellow Seas after a week's training period. He was not happy about being a member of that wolfpack because the *Chicolar*'s skipper was brash and the *Whitefish*'s inexperienced. Right from the start Richardson and his executive officer, Keith Leone, thought that Blunt acted strangely, his orders often contrary to what Richardson knew they were expected to do. When a message from Hawaii told them where to expect a six-ship enemy convoy, Blunt reluctantly permitted the submarines to head for the area. In about seven hours the three subs had the convoy on their radar. When *Chicolar* went in to attack, the convoy surprised her crew by zigzagging in the sub's direction. Richardson turned the *Eel* toward the *Chicolar* to try to divert the enemy's attention to enable the submarine to dive and escape, but Blunt countermanded the order and ordered Richardson to attack the convoy. Required to obey orders, Richardson sank the three big ships, after which Blunt ordered the *Eel* back to its patrol position. As a result they lost the *Chicolar* and its crew, sunk by the three small ships escorting the convoy. A few nights later, disaster struck the *Eel*. She had had trouble with her hydraulic system from time to time and suddenly began taking in water as she prepared to dive. By a gallant effort Richardson, who had been on the bridge, closed the hatch from outside as the *Eel* went down, leaving him and the sub's quartermaster, Oregon, in the water. They could only hope that the vents could be closed by hand power before the *Eel* was completely flooded. The two men in the water were picked up by a Japanese fishing boat whose captain was a maniac. Oregon was

tortured and killed. Also tortured and beaten, Richardson was placed in a small forward compartment in the hold which had been used for paint storage. Although the compartment's porthole could be opened, it was too small for "Rich" to crawl through, but he managed to paint the word *Eel* on the outside of the boat to ensure his rescue, should the sub regain the surface and find the boat. It did. A short time later the *Eel* received a message from headquarters that Japanese ships were moving along the coast of China and Korea. When Blunt refused to allow the submarines to track them, Richardson had the pharmacist's mate place a sleeping pill in Blunt's coffee, putting him under for twelve hours. The description of the ensuing battle is long and detailed. Richardson later attacked two more convoys and during the last encounter came close to losing his submarine.

Those who have read *Run Silent, Run Deep* by Beach will be pleased with this sequel. The suspense is high, the characters admirable and convincing, and the action authentic. Young people who like World War II stories have been responding to this one enthusiastically.

The attacks, which are the most suspenseful part of the book, are so detailed that a book talk cannot do justice to one. The best approach is to use the first part of the above annotation to interest those who like submarine war stories.

Cold Is the Sea by Beach also will appeal to those who have read the first two books. Fifteen years after the end of the war, when the United States Navy has nuclear-powered subs, Keith Leone, now captain of his own submarine, is on an assignment below the Arctic ice. Unknowingly he gets too close to a Russian missile base and his ship is damaged. Rich, who is now squadron commander, and Buck, formerly on the *Eel* and now captain of another submarine, try to rescue the crew. William D. King, a British submarine commander during World War II, in *Adventure in Depth* combines his wartime experiences with his solo sail around the world in a small boat some twenty years later. This book has a wealth of material for book talks. *Return from the River Kwai* by Jan and Clay Blair is the true story of some 2,000 Australian and British prisoners of war, many of whom helped build the Japanese railroad through the jungles of Burma and Thailand. They were on their way to Japan in unmarked ships when their convoy was attacked by American submarines. Many died of exposure, of malnutrition, because of drinking sea water, of their injuries, or because they could not swim. Their suffering before the same submarines picked up the survivors later is graphically described. It will be interesting for young people to read *Iron Coffins* by Herbert Werner, a German U-boat captain during World War II, to compare the experiences of German and American submarines.

BICKEL, LENNARD

Mawson's Will

1977. Stein & Day.

Because Scott and Amundsen made the headlines in 1912 on their dashes for the South Pole, the exploration done by Sir Douglas Mawson during the same period went virtually unnoticed. He has his supporters, however, who feel that what he accomplished was equally, if not more, important. Captain Robert Scott had tried hard to get Mawson, an experienced Antarctic man, to join his expedition but Mawson with another objective in mind – the exploration of the unknown land west of Cape Adare – declined. Mawson and his group of twenty-five men reached the Antarctic in late December 1911, on the stout little ship *Aurora,* but they had great trouble trying to put in to land and establish a base ashore. It was well into January before the ship came to open water in a very large bay, on the shore of which they found a spot for the main base. Ten days of backbreaking labor were needed to get all their supplies and equipment transferred to the site chosen for the camp. The author describes the work of setting up base camp and preparing for the long winter ahead. When gale winds blasted the camp for days at a time, so that no work could be done out of doors, Mawson trained his men for the exploration in the spring. In August they hacked a room out of the hard blue-green ice at the top of the plateau, naming it Aladdin's Cave. This refuge was to save the lives of several of the men when they struggled in off a trail in hurricane winds. Bad weather caused delays of the four expeditions and it was November 9 before they could leave camp. Their time was limited because they had to be back at base by January 19 when the *Aurora* was due to pick them up. Bickel tells only of Mawson's trip by dogsled inland with Lt. Ninnis and Dr. Xavier Mertz. The physical condition of the three men deteriorated under the extremely bad weather and almost impassable terrain. On December 14 Ninnis, the best dog team, all the dog food, the large tent, and most of the men's rations disappeared into a bottomless crevasse. No reply came to the survivors' shouts. With a week's supply of food left and 300 rugged miles to travel back to camp, the future for Mawson and Mertz looked hopeless. They had to kill their dogs, one by one, to give themselves and the remaining animals a little sustenance. The author describes the tortuous journey on which Dr. Mertz and all the dogs died. It is incredible that Mawson made it back to Aladdin's Cave. He missed the *Aurora* and had to spend another year in the Antarctic before he was rescued.

This dramatic true adventure holds the reader's interest to the end. A young person who is interested in exploration in the polar regions will especially enjoy the book. It is also a good example of survival under hostile conditions.

14 For book talks the building of the base camp, pages 57–61 or the

beginning of the Mawson team's explorations and the details of their supplies, equipment, and clothing will be interesting, pages 87–90.

Also suggest *Antarctica, My Destiny* by Finn Ronne, who spent most of his career exploring that region. Although on his early visits when he worked with Admiral Byrd, skis and dog teams were used; later, when he led his own expeditions, tractors and planes were in service. There are also a number of good books about the International Geophysical Year (IGY, July 1957–December 1958) and here are two: *90° South* in which Paul Siple gives a vivid account of the year he spent in the Antarctic as leader of eighteen men engaged in scientific investigation; and *Operation Deepfreeze* by the Commander of the United States Naval Support Force, George Dufek, who has written authoritatively of the establishment of Antarctic scientific bases for his country's participation in the activities during the IGY. Some young people will be entertained by *To the Top of the World* in which Charles Kuralt tells of a number of Minnesota businessmen with their friends and acquaintances who decided to attempt to reach the North Pole by snowmobile. Although they never attained their goal, they had a real adventure which they will never forget. It is possible too that some readers would enjoy a novel about the polar regions. For them the librarian might suggest *Ice Station Zebra* by Alistair MacLean in which the survivors of a fire in the Arctic are rescued by submarine and Russian sabotage is uncovered.

BOLT, ROBERT

A Man for All Seasons

1962. Random House.

In order that readers might understand this play, the author has told in the preface a little about the history of England. Arthur, King of England, had married a Spanish princess, Catherine, in 1501 and died shortly thereafter. Henry, the next brother in line for the throne, succeeded him and was crowned Henry VIII. The royal houses of Spain and England asked the Pope for a dispensation so that Henry might marry his brother's widow, an act specifically forbidden in the Bible. The Pope granted it. Catherine had several children by Henry, but the only one to survive was a girl. Henry needed an heir and a daughter would not suffice. He fell in love with Anne Boleyn, and as Catherine now seemed to be barren, he asked the Pope to set aside the dispensation and consider him divorced from Catherine. He would then be free to marry Anne, who would surely produce an heir. When the Pope refused, Henry would not be stopped. He appointed Thomas Cranmer Archbishop of Canterbury, who agreed to the divorce. Henry then married Anne and became the head of the Church of England. Sir Thomas More, whom Henry had appointed Lord Chancellor, refused to subscribe to the Act of Supremacy. Although he did not express himself one way or

another, he resigned his post as chancellor, in the belief that if he kept quiet in retirement Henry would forget about him. But Henry's conscience bothered him so, he was unable to forget. Friends and enemies alike tried every way they could to make More give his consent to the divorce and remarriage, but he adhered firmly to his allegiance to the Pope and the Catholic church. When money became so scarce that all the servants were let go, More's wife and daughter had to take over the running of the household; yet More would not change his mind. Eventually he was imprisoned, brought to trial for high treason, condemned to death, and beheaded.

The play is exceptionally moving because it portrays a man who held firmly to his beliefs and principles in the face of disgrace and poverty for his family and imprisonment and execution for himself. It also provides an exciting glimpse into England's Tudor past. More's approval of Henry VIII's marriage to Anne was required in the form of an oath. Bolt says that to More an oath was an invitation to God to act as witness and the result of perjury was damnation.

For a book talk discuss briefly the events which led up to the time of the action on stage.

Galileo by Bertolt Brecht is a play about the Italian scientist who discovered that it was the earth that revolved around the sun rather than the sun around the earth. The Church insisted that this could not be true and cited Biblical passages to prove it. Galileo had to recant or suffer for his theory. He recanted publicly, although privately he still maintained that his findings were true. If a mature young person wants to know more about the woman whom Henry VIII was so determined to marry, the librarian might recommend *Brief Gaudy Hour* by Margaret Barnes. There is an emphasis on sex in this book because many men in France and England were in love with Anne Boleyn. She refused to submit to Henry until he could marry her because she wanted the power which accompanied the crown. In *Saint Joan* by George Bernard Shaw and *The Lark* by Jean Anouilh, Joan of Arc is burned at the stake when she refuses to deny the voices which instructed her to lead the French army and to see that the Dauphin was crowned King of France. A novel that pictures Sir Thomas More and his family throughout their many happy years and the sad ones after More displeased the king and paid for it with his life is *St. Thomas Eve* by Jean Plaidy (Eleanor Hibbert).

BONINGTON, CHRIS

Everest the Hard Way

1976. Random House.

In 1972 the author's group of climbers failed in its attempt to reach the summit of Everest by way of the southwest face. He did not expect to have another opportunity to try again until 1979 because the climbing periods had all been booked by other groups up to that

time. Then suddenly in December 1973, the Canadians who were scheduled for autumn in 1975 cancelled, and Bonington had a chance to organize another climb. His description of the adventure begins with the search for a sponsor willing to invest £100,000, which proved not to be difficult, since Barclay's Bank International decided to advance the funds from its advertising budget. The next problem was picking the team. Bonington describes the qualifications of each person he chose: sixteen climbers; someone to organize all the equipment; someone to take charge of the food supplies; a base camp manager; an advance camp manager; a transportation organizer for their twenty-four tons of gear and food; and two doctors. The British Broadcasting Corporation decided to cover the expedition and sent along a producer, cameraman, soundman, and high-altitude cameraman. Everyone did his preparatory work superbly and on August 2 the majority of the team set off from Kathmandu for the long overland trek to base camp. Several men kept diaries and Bonington used quotations from these frequently, because eventually the men were scattered among the six camps up the mountain and their firsthand observations, descriptions, and complaints are more meaningful than any secondhand reports the author might have made, since he could not be on each scene. The problems of finding the right route up the mountain, of establishing the various camps, and of transporting supplies are described in detail. The expedition was successful, for the first team and part of the second did reach the summit.

Bonington writes very well and the reader has no difficulty in visualizing the events. He manages to convey to the reader a sense of excitement as the climb goes forward.

The experiences of the men who drove the truckloads of equipment to Kathmandu could be worked into a book talk, pages 42–47. The Sherpa ceremony of consecrating the base camp altar and the first tragedy is another possibility, pages 75–78.

To those who want other books on mountain climbing, suggest *K–2, the Savage Mountain* by Charles Houston, one of the best mountain climbing accounts. It tells of the two events that caused American climbers to fail to reach Mt. Everest's summit — for nine of the ten available days for the final assault they were held at the camp just below the peak by snow and an eighty-mile-an-hour wind and they refused to leave one climber, who had developed thrombophlebitis in his leg, to die on the mountain. Those fortunate enough to have copies of *Annapurna* by Herzog, *Tiger of the Snows* by Tenzing, and *Conquest of Everest* by Hunt should use them as follow-ups also. Although mountaineers, altitude physiologists, and doctors said that the climbing of Everest without oxygen could result in physical and perhaps mental damage to the climbers, Peter Habeler and Reinhold Messner did it with apparently no ill effects. Peter tells of their experiences in *The Lonely Victory.* The best feature of

Reinhold Messner's *Everest: Expedition to the Ultimate* is the magnificent photographs, but his account is somewhat less interesting than Peter's. *The Boldest Dream* by Rick Ridgeway is quite a contrast to the usual book on climbing Mount Everest in that the team included two women, several of the climbers were relatively inexperienced or physically ill prepared, the expedition was financially unsound, and some of the participants were emotionally immature.

BRADLEY, WILLIAM W.

Life on the Run

1976. Quadrangle/New York Times Book Co.

In writing about what it is like to be a professional athlete in the United States, Bradley, a Princeton graduate, Rhodes scholar, and member of the New York Knicks basketball team, covers many topics. Using part of the 1973–74 season's scheduled games as the warp of his narrative, he weaves into it biographical sketches of teammates and coaches, among them Dave DeBusschere, Dick Barnett, Walt Frazier, Phil Jackson, and Willis Reed. He tells what it is like to be on the road day after day, flying to city after city to play, rarely getting proper rest. His description of locker room activities and conversations are candid and unexpurgated. The reader learns about life in New York City, as well as some facts about other cities in which the team plays. Bradley describes various techniques in playing, explains the practice sessions which the coach had instituted for the team, and points out the strengths and weaknesses of several opponents. He discusses ways in which players can augment their incomes by doing commercials and giving endorsements. One can understand why he did not do this himself after reading about some of the offers he received.

The book is well written and is enjoyed by older students who want more than a superficial picture of famous athletes. Bradley has had the reputation of being a very private person, yet in this book he gives more information about himself than perhaps he realizes. He has great respect for and understanding of his teammates, as well as a special sensitivity to the problems of the game's black players, all of which he writes about freely. Because of his experiences on the team, Bradley thinks less not only in terms of a black race but also in terms of other group labels, and points out that there is much he does not know and can never know about black people.

Because of the vast quantity of detail, there is not much information that can serve as a book talk. However, a brief biographical account of the author could introduce the book, pages 33–36. Bradley discusses his injuries and keeping in shape and this might be of interest, pages 131–35.

Those who want to know more about the author's early years as a high school and college star should read *A Sense of Where You Are*

by John McPhee. *Carew* by Rod Carew and Ira Berkow also has more depth than the average sports biography, covering not only Carew's very successful baseball career, information about other players and game strategy, but also the problems of marriage to a Jewish girl and of bringing up a family. *Decathlon Challenge* by Bruce Jenner and Phillip Finch is an autobiography detailing Jenner's athletic career from junior high school to his triumph in the Olympic Games at Montreal in 1976.

BRISTOW, GWEN

Deep Summer

1937. Crowell.

On the way by riverboat from Connecticut to West Florida (then known as Upper Louisiana) shortly before the American Revolution began, fifteen-year-old Judith Sheramy and her family met Philip Larne, a well-to-do young man who was traveling on his own boat with a group of slaves and learned they were to be neighbors on grants of land from the English king. Mr. Sheramy did not approve of the sophisticated Philip and asked Judith not to see him. But it was difficult for her to obey her father, since Philip took every opportunity to be near her, and they fell in love. When Philip asked her to elope, she did and her family accepted the marriage, even if they did not approve. Philip's slaves cleared the land quickly, and he made money by growing indigo. The Larnes soon had a fine house and more slaves. Judith was learning to be a lady, but with a large house, slaves, and soon two children, she had little leisure. The Sheramys also prospered but not so quickly. When Caleb, Judith's brother, went to New Orleans on business, he fell in love with Dolores Bondio, a girl he met on the levee. Because she was sure her family would not approve of him because he was Protestant, he persuaded her to elope. The young people were very happy for almost a year. One day when the Larnes invited the Sheramys to dinner, a Yankee trader, also a guest, recognized Dolores as a girl who had served drinks in a tavern. As Dolores was expecting a baby, Judith and Philip had to take her in when Caleb rejected her because of her lies. When a boy was born to her, Caleb came for it. He offered to provide for Dolores in New Orleans but she was not to have the child. After she tried to kidnap the baby and wounded Caleb, the court gave him the child legally. Dolores took a room in a tavern in a nearby town where she befriended a man out of work and eventually they lived a hand-to-mouth existence as man and wife. Years later, when yellow fever killed young Philip Larne and almost took the oldest son David, Dolores returned to Caleb's to nurse their son Roger who was also sick, dying of the disease herself later. The reader follows the families through the years which brought some happiness and some tragedy to them. Eventually Philip and Judith's

son David took over the plantation, and after Philip's death Judith gave David's wife the keys to the household and moved out of the master bedroom.

Young people who like a period novel with a love story enjoy this book. The characters are not as well drawn as one would wish, but the story holds the reader's interest and the times seem well depicted.

When Judith was expecting her first child, she and Philip lived in a leaky log cabin. The slaves were kept so busy clearing land for planting, they had little time to repair the cabin. One day when Philip had to go to town, he asked Judith what he could get for her and she told him plaster to be used to chink the walls. The outcome of his trip to town could be worked into a book talk, pages 49–52. If the speaker would like to continue the episode by telling of the birth of the baby under awful conditions, pages 52–56 give the details. By way of contrast, pages 165–66 describe the luxury that Judith lived in later.

Deep Summer ends in 1810. *Handsome Road* begins in 1859 as the country is coming close to the Civil War. Three of its main characters are Denis Larne, the great-grandson of Philip and Judith, and Amy Sheramy and Corrie Mae Upjohn, the great-granddaughters of Dolores. Amy and Denis are happily married for a few years, but the Civil War takes Denis, and Amy must struggle to hold the plantation for their son after the war. Corrie Mae lived a hand-to-mouth existence, except for a short time when she was a carpetbagger's mistress. At the end she looked forward to the prospect of her illegitimate son's earning a decent living. *This Side of Glory* begins in 1912. When Kester Larne and Eleanor Upjohn meet and fall deeply in love, neither family approves of the marriage. Kester is the pampered son of a long-established family whose plantation is heavily mortgaged, and although Eleanor has a college education, her family was once considered poor white trash. Their marital troubles at times make them very unhappy but they both learn from the difficulties and have a better union because of them. Bristow also wrote *Jubilee Trail* in which Garnet Cameron, falling madly in love with Oliver Hale, goes to California with him by boat, covered wagon, and horseback only to find him not what she had thought him to be. Her friend Florinda, a "loose" woman they met on the journey west, stood by her and Garnet eventually found happiness and security with another man.

BRONTË, EMILY

Wuthering Heights

[1847]

This romantic novel of the early nineteenth century has its setting on the wild moors of northern England. The word "Wuthering" is a provincial adjective used to describe the atmospheric tumult caused

by stormy weather. Against this background the author has placed a strange assortment of characters who reflect the wildness of their environment. The story is told by Mr. Lockwood, a tenant at Thrushcross Grange, an estate formerly owned by the Lintons but now in the possession of Mr. Heathcliff of Wuthering Heights. During a visit to his landlord, the falling snow turned into a bad blizzard, and Mr. Lockwood was compelled to spend the night. He dreamed that he was awakened by a noise at his window. It was Catherine Linton begging to be let in; but when Heathcliff appeared, roused by Mr. Lockwood's shouts, the voice was heard no more. In order to satisfy his curiosity about the occupants of Wuthering Heights, Lockwood asked his housekeeper to tell him their story. He learned that Mr. Earnshaw, the former owner of the Heights, had brought home a sullen, starving, small orphan lad to live with his own two children, Catherine and Hindley. This boy was called Heathcliff, and although he was disliked and mistreated by Hindley, Catherine and her father came to love him. When Mr. Earnshaw died, Hindley became master and treated Heathcliff as a servant. This enraged the boy and made him seek revenge. Although Catherine loved Heathcliff, she married Edgar Linton, their neighbor, and Heathcliff never forgave her for it. Hatred, bitterness, and resentment made him want the Earnshaws and their offspring to suffer as he had, and he made plans whereby he would someday own both the great houses and control the children of both families. This he did. The destinies of the characters are worked out in a somber, fatalistic, and violent vein. After the deaths of the principals, it was claimed that their spirits roamed the moors.

This book is read and enjoyed by older boys and girls who are mature enough to understand it.

In talking about the book, explain that it is a very melodramatic story, a product of a young woman's imaginative nature and of the bleak country from which she came. Introduce Mr. Lockwood and tell of his first association with Heathcliff and his dream of Catherine, chapters 1–3.

If a young person has not read *Jane Eyre*, the creative work of Emily's sister Charlotte and a product of the same environment, suggest it. Jane became a governess after she finished school and went to work at Thornfield Hall, young Mr. Rochester's home. The young people fell in love and he proposed. A man interrupted their wedding ceremony, claiming that Mr. Rochester already had a wife. Years later he was reunited with Jane. Another story in which a dreary environment has a tragic effect on the characters is *Return of the Native* by Thomas Hardy. Eustacia Vye, a beautiful woman, sets out to win Clym Yeobright, home on a visit, because she thinks he will return to Paris and she can escape from the heath. Because of a tangle of circumstances it appears to Clym that his wife was the cause of his mother's death and they separate, unhappy and

depressed. Eustacia appeals to a former lover for help, but their plans go awry and both drown in the weir. Walter Scott in *The Bride of Lammermore* tells the story of Edgar, Master of Ravenswood, who had fallen deeply in love with Lucy Ashley. Her father, who had acquired his ancestral estate by a highly questionable maneuver, more or less favored the betrothal, but his wife vehemently opposed it and arranged another marriage for Lucy, which led to a tragic ending. Also suggest *Take Heed of Loving Me* by Elizabeth Gray Vining in which poet John Donne is the leading character. He had been an immensely popular reprobate until he fell in love with Anne More whose family disapproved of their marriage. Although John reformed, his earlier reputation made it difficult for him to earn a living. Except when the young couple was befriended by wealthy people, they lived in straitened circumstances, yet remained devoted to one another.

BROWER, KENNETH

The Starship and the Canoe

1978. Holt.

Kenneth Brower has written a biography of Freeman Dyson, one of the world's foremost theoretical physicists who believes that man's future depends upon colonizing in outer space, and of his son, George, whose life is bound close to the earth and sea and the primitive life of the native inhabitants of the British Columbian and Alaskan coastal area. Both men have worked on the transport needed in their respective projects. Freeman cooperated with outstanding scientists in designing a spaceship powered by atomic energy. George constructed a six-man kayak. *Orion*, the space vehicle, never left the earth; the kayak, *Mount Fairweather*, is being used by George as he explores the Inner Passage from Vancouver to Alaska. Brower tells more of Freeman's background as a precocious student, a mathematician for the Royal Air Force Bomber Command during World War II, and his early days in the United States than he gives of his work on the *Orion*. Freeman is very interested in extraterrestrial intelligence and in ways to learn more about it, but the reader will learn little about that subject from this book. Probably because he spent so much time working and traveling with George, Brower expounds at greater length on George's methods of gathering information about the Inner Passage and his work on various kayaks. George did not want to finish college, but, motivated by his interests, he built a tree house in a Douglas fir where he has lived from time to time for several years and expects to have homes of various types scattered all the way to Alaska. The author describes several of George's unusual experiences with people. At one time he had many adventures working for a Colorado cowboy who was taking his livestock, hay, provisions, a motor home, a truck, and materials for building a

house to Alaska on a barge. At another time he was cook for a group of scientists who spent the summer studying birds, fish, plants, small mammals, and glacial and geological formations. Brower compares the problems which the two men have had in constructing their forms of transport. Freeman's, of course, are much more complicated and less likely to succeed. The author feels that neither man is entirely conscious of reality. He says he thinks the earth is not such a bad place to live and that there are still many things to be discovered here. He speculates that because George in many ways resembles his grandfather and is unlike his father, perhaps one of George's offspring may be brilliant like Freeman and actually colonize the stars.

Brower writes sensitively, particularly of George, whom he seems to understand very well. A young person interested in the out-of-doors will enjoy this biography. It may also appeal to boys who have conflicts with their fathers, as George did with Freeman. A nature buff might pick up an interest in the exploration of outer space.

For a book talk, tell how George tested his three-man kayak in the rapids, pages 83–85, or recount one of his adventures with the Colorado cowboy, pages 96–104. Or use the first part of the above annotation to try to interest young people in both of the principals.

Although *Paddling My Own Canoe* by Audrey Sutherland is about a woman's experiences, her accomplishments are fascinating and would challenge many men and boys. To give her four children an opportunity to develop their independence and herself the chance to test her strength, challenge her ingenuity, rediscover a wilderness area once inhabited by people, and enjoy the sea and land in all its variety and beauty, the author explored repeatedly, at first by swimming and, years later, by inflatable canoe, twenty miles of coastline on the north side of East Moloka'i, in the Hawaiian Islands, where some of the highest cliffs in the world rise out of the sea and alternate with valleys in which there are possible camping areas. A young person interested in traveling great distances by canoe should be introduced to *Kayaks to the Arctic* by Elinor Nickerson. She and her husband with three of their sons paddled their kayaks from Yellowknife on Great Slave Lake in Canada's Northwest Territories along the MacKenzie River to its delta at the Arctic Ocean, a distance of 1,100 miles. To anyone wanting more information on Freeman Dyson and the starship, suggest his *Disturbing the Universe** and the books listed in the last paragraph of its annotation.

BROWN, CLAUDE

Manchild in the Promised Land

1965. Macmillan.

Claude Brown recalls his life in Harlem and his escape from the possibility of the early death that was the lot of so many of his contemporaries. He describes how he lived on the street from the

time he was five, quickly learning to fight, steal, and lie, making a name for himself not only among boys his own age but with the older cats hanging around the street corners. Claude was not really a neglected child; his parents both worked, maintained a home, and took care of him, but their lectures and beatings turned him off. Yet he was fond of his mother and older sisters and was especially concerned for his younger brother. He lost interest in school soon after he started and, because being on the street was more fun, he became very skilled at playing hookey. At the age of ten he was caught robbing a store. For this he was sent to Youth House where he had a great time because discipline was lax. His return to Harlem meant continued petty crime and free sexual activity with prostitutes as well as with young girls close to his own age. Brown is very frank about sex and his experiences with it throughout the book. His next confinement was at Wiltwyck where he was befriended by a woman counselor to whom he was somewhat responsive. Drug addiction had become a way of life in Harlem, and when Claude left Wiltwyck, he too was eager to try heroin. His description of his terrifying reaction to the drug shows why he never again tried hard drugs, although he did smoke pot for years. His next arrest for stealing resulted in commitment to Warwick where he learned more about crime and the sordidness of prison life. He also learned to like jazz there. It was while employed as houseboy for the superintendent at Warwick that Claude was introduced to good books by that man's wife. He began to admire men like Einstein and Schweitzer but was still unable to see anything in his own future except the street, petty crime, and selling pot. However, when he turned sixteen, he decided he did not want to acquire a police record because, if ever he were to get a lucky break, he wanted a clean slate. He looked for a job, moved out of Harlem, and began attending night school. Drug addiction in Harlem was becoming so prevalent that Brown describes it as a plague. He observes how the Coptic religion and the Muslim movement influenced several of his friends, helping to save them from drugs and crime. Eventually Claude finished high school and earned a scholarship for college. As Harlem had changed, Claude had matured because he had a good mind and used it.

Teenagers from segregated slum areas like Harlem readily identify with this realistic account and can be encouraged by the fact that not only Claude but also two or three of his friends were able to rise above their environment. Critics differ widely about this book. Some praise it highly, while others say the same story has been better told by other black writers. Many librarians have found it a useful book.

In many communities the librarian can suggest this autobiography only to individuals, but in cities with large minority groups, the librarian may use it in a book talk. Claude's experience with heroin in chapter 4 would be a good introduction.

Gordon Parks who grew up in a different part of the country also had to overcome poverty, though his surroundings were less degrading. His talent and perseverance eventually helped him make a name for himself as a writer and photographer. His autobiography is *A Choice of Weapons.* In Ronald Fair's novel *We Can't Breathe,* Ernie Johnson, a black boy growing up on Chicago's south side was beset by many of the same problems and temptations as Claude Brown. But Ernie had the encouragement of a good family and a teacher who was interested in him, so he was able to make something of himself in spite of his environment. In the first part of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X,* Malcolm Little too tells much the same story Claude Brown does. But while in prison Little was converted to the Muslim religion, an event that changed his life.

BROWN, DEE

Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee

1970. Holt.

Creek Mary's Blood

1980. Holt.

These two books are concerned with the situation between the whites and the Indians within the borders of what is now the United States. *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee* is historical fact; *Creek Mary's Blood* is a novel with some fictional and some historical characters. The first summarizes the white extermination of the eastern Indian tribes and the removal of their remnants to the region west of the Mississippi River. The latter begins before the American Revolution when Creek Mary was a young woman and white settlers were trying to drive the Indians from Georgia. Mary, known as the Beloved Woman, rallied the Creeks and the Cherokees and planned an attack on Savannah to let the whites know that the Indians would not give up their lands. When someone warned the whites, the Indians had to withdraw. Mary set out for a friend's village and on the way was captured by a Cherokee whom she later married. They had a son named the Runner, the father of Dane who tells Creek Mary's story. The Indians gradually gave up much of their land in Georgia, Kentucky, and Virginia. *Creek Mary's Blood* tells of a large group of Cherokees who believed they only had to prove to the whites that they had adopted their ways and would make good neighbors to be allowed to have their own nation where they were. They laid out a new village which would resemble Washington, D.C., patterned a constitution after that of the United States, established a legislature, began a newspaper, and built a school. But Andrew Jackson was determined to move the Indians west of the Mississippi. Some Indians complied quite soon after the order to move out came; they fared somewhat better than those moved by

the soldiers later. Creek Mary's family was among the latter. Beyond the Mississippi the Indians roamed more or less freely from one hunting ground to another until 1849. After the discovery of gold in California and Colorado white people poured across the Mississippi and the government sent soldiers to try to restrain the Indians. In both books Brown describes in graphic detail the fate of the tribes during the period from 1860 to 1890. Several army generals thought the only good Indians were dead ones and used any excuse to attack an Indian camp and slaughter its occupants, even if they were only women and children. Occasionally the Indians handed the whites a real defeat, but often they were not well enough organized nor were their firearms comparable to those used by the whites. Whites not only killed off the buffalo on which the Indians depended for food, they did not provide a substitute, considering it no great loss if the Indians starved to death. Dane, who spoke, read, and wrote English, also tells his own story. He often served as a translator for various chiefs meeting with government emissaries. Dane was ninety-one years old and living on a reservation in Montana when an eastern newspaperman persuaded him to tell the story of his grandmother and her family. Only one other member of the large family remained, a granddaughter who had studied medicine in the East and had returned to her people to take care of them.

The teacher or librarian can use either book, depending upon whether the young person seeking advice likes fiction or nonfiction. Critics do not agree in their opinion of *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee*. Some say there are too many characters and events so that confusion results. Others firmly believe it is an effective history of the Plains Indians and their courageous struggle against white encroachment. It certainly is being read by mature readers in senior high. Whenever possible the author quotes an Indian's eloquent account of a battle, of a confrontation with white negotiators or agents, of desolate areas to which a tribe had been assigned, or of an Indian's plea for justice. The readers of *Creek Mary's Blood* become deeply involved with the characters, who are vividly drawn. It is easier to read than the nonfictional account.

A book talk could be made from any of the chapters in *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee*, but those particularly damning to the whites are chapter 4, which tells of the massacre at Sand Creek, chapter 7, which describes how Generals Hancock, Sheridan, and Custer ravaged Indian camps, and chapter 13, the story of Chief Joseph and the Nez Percés. For *Creek Mary's Blood* one might want to tell how Tecumseh came south to rally the Creeks and Cherokees and persuade them to resist the white aggression, pages 71–78. The incident during which Dane rescues a Cheyenne woman could also be described, pages 183–202.

The following books about Indians might also be suggested. Elliot Arnold in *The Camp Grant Massacre* tells of the situation between

the whites in Tucson and the Indians which led to that massacre, even though First Lieutenant Whitman in charge of Camp Grant had promised to protect the Indians who were camped nearby. Arnold also wrote *Blood Brother* in which Tom Jeffords and Cochise, chief of one of the Apache groups, become blood brothers during the years when unscrupulous whites were fighting to destroy the Indians. *War Cries on Horseback* by Stephen Longstreet gives another account of the vicious warfare between whites and Indians who fought to retain their way of life. Another novel of this period is *North against the Sioux* by Kenneth Ulyatt in which Red Cloud gathers the tribes in a desperate attempt to turn the whites back after the government broke its treaty and allowed settlers to invade territory promised to the Indians. N. Scott Momaday in *The Way to Rainy Mountain* traces briefly the story of the ancient Kiowas in their migration from the Yellowstone to the Black Hills and south to the Wichita Mountains by recounting their legends, history, and memories. He had divided his information into three categories by graphically describing the landscape, the times, and the human spirit. See also *The Frontiersman** by Allan Eckert for other books about Indians and whites in the early days of this country.

BUCK, PEARL

The Good Earth

1931. John Day.

Wang Lung, a young Chinese peasant, lived in near poverty, yet loved the land he tilled. He did not want to acquire a pretty woman for a wife; one who would tend the house, bear him children, and work in the fields beside him was preferable. O-lan, formerly a slave in the rich house of Hwang, was plain of face, silent, and undemanding, and so she remained during the good years when their sons were born and the harvests were plentiful and the lean years when famine and drought forced them to go south to work in the city. Even then, despite extreme hardship, Wang Lung would not sell his land. During the revolution, having acquired money and jewels, he was able to buy more land, becoming wealthy despite the constant threat of robbery and pillage. When he took a second wife, a fragile woman of beauty for whom he added an inner court to his house, he spent fewer hours in his beloved fields. O-lan, who had been ill for some time and all but forgotten, went unnoticed until she lay dying. Then Wang Lung, realizing how much they had all depended upon her, was kind, but could not bring himself to love her. The sons who had been educated as befitted those of well-to-do families cared little for the land, preferring to live in town. Wang Lung even became rich enough to buy the House of Hwang, but life in the courts of that great house was brightened only by the birth of grandsons in whom he took great delight and in whom he placed his faith and hope for a

return to the good earth from whence had come their sustenance. Although Wang Lung is the central character, it is faithful, plodding O-lan, who, accepting her destiny and fulfilling it to the best of her ability, is the stronger and more appealing.

This deep and compassionate novel appeals to mature readers who are sensitive to the thoughts and feelings of others. Its conversations about sex and marriage are natural.

A condensation of chapter 1, telling of Wang Lung's wedding day up to the burning of incense to the temple gods on page 19, is a suitable introduction to this outstanding novel.

Also suggest *Nectar in a Sieve* by Kamala Markandaya. The life of Rukmani, married to a poor farmer in India, was a constant struggle against poverty, hunger, drought, fear, despair, and death. In spite of these hardships, the human spirit survived. In *East Wind, West Wind,* also by Buck, Kwei-lan, only daughter of a wealthy Chinese family, was betrothed when she was a baby. Through most of her first seventeen years she was being traditionally prepared for that marriage. Her husband, a complete stranger to her, had been educated in the United States and preferred Western customs. Kwei-lan had to find new ways to make herself attractive to him.

BURGESS, ALAN

The Small Woman

1957. Dutton.

Gladys Aylward, a London parlormaid, wanted more than anything else to be a missionary in China, but when she failed to pass the course that would qualify her for such a post, there seemed little hope of achieving her goal. Then one day she learned that an elderly missionary in China, a Mrs. Jeannie Lawson, was looking for a younger woman to carry on her work. Gladys wrote to Mrs. Lawson, was accepted, and on October 18, 1930, was on her way to China via the Trans-Siberian Railroad, a journey complicated by a war between Russia and China. By making a wide detour she reached Tientsin, a city south of Peking, and learned there that Mrs. Lawson now was at Yangcheng, a mission station in Shansi Province, in northwest China. Traveling by mule through the mountains, Gladys reached Yangcheng, the small, walled town that was to be her home for many years. There, while operating the Inn of the Eight Happinesses, a stopping place for mule caravans, the two women used simple Bible stories and homely illustrations to tell the travelers about Christianity. After Mrs. Lawson's death the powerful Mandarin of Yangcheng asked Gladys to serve as his official foot inspector, which enabled her to tour the mountain villages and talk to many people who might be converted to Christianity. The following years

were filled with satisfaction, strange adventures, and hard work; moreover, Gladys acquired a number of children abandoned by their families. When the Japanese invaded Yangcheng in 1938, she and her friends took to the mountains, where she was constantly on the move helping to relieve the suffering of the people. She also met and fell in love with Colonel Linnan of Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek's intelligence service. As she moved about the countryside, she gathered and was able to report information about Japanese positions. Eventually the Japanese put a price on her head, and she decided, after much soul-searching, to leave Shansi Province, taking with her the orphans at the mission. Worn out by hardship and privation and separated from Colonel Linnan by the events of the war, Gladys suffered a physical collapse that necessitated her return to England for treatment. After nearly twenty years of work, she left China feeling that she had been richly rewarded in her efforts to serve God and man.

This inspiring story of courage and devotion has appealed to many girls. The movie, "The Inn of the Eight Happinesses," based on Gladys's experiences, has motivated young people to ask for the book in the library.

It is fun to use this book in a book talk. Tell of Gladys's determination to be a missionary and relate incidents such as her experiences on the Trans-Siberian Railroad, pages 26–40; her first meetings with the Mandarin, pages 76–79; how she stopped the convicts' riot, pages 87–94; her relief work after the Japanese bombing, pages 121–28; or her incredible trek through the mountains on foot, and later by train, to Sian with nearly a hundred children, pages 198–247.

Also suggest *A Ship Called Hope* by William Walsh. This is the story of a peacetime hospital ship, a new kind of missionary, which visited the major cities of Vietnam and Indonesia, as well as many remote islands, to bring medical help to thousands and teach people, nurses, and midwives techniques in health care. The doctors aboard were unpaid volunteers; the nurses and other personnel received only token salaries. In *Bamboo Hospital* Katherine Read relates the story of her own parents who were Albert and Cora Henderson, medical missionaries in Burma. A good book for introducing Albert Schweitzer, another missionary, to thoughtful young people is *Dr. Schweitzer of Lambaréné* by Norman Cousins. The author describes the doctor's work in Africa and mentions briefly his career as organist, pianist, theologian, and philosopher. The librarian or teacher can then use any adult biography in the high school collection to give a well-rounded portrait of this important man. Pearl Buck, whose parents also were missionaries in China, provides insight into the Chinese life and character in her autobiography, *My Several Worlds.*

CALLISON, BRIAN

A Ship Is Dying

1976. Dutton.

The *Lycomedes* was a common British ship hauling cargo across the North Sea to Norway, Denmark, and Sweden on a very stormy winter day. She had a crew of fifty-three aboard plus a dog and a parrot. There were at least five people on watch because visibility was very poor. Second Officer Michael Fuller thought that radar showed something ahead for just a moment and to verify it he used his binoculars to search the thirty- to fifty-foot waves ahead but saw nothing. Bosun Skinner at the forward end of the centrecastle alleyway also thought for a second that he had seen something ahead, but he dismissed the idea. After all the ship was equipped with radar to give them warning. Actually there was something ahead, the great steel pyramid making up an oil rig service barge that had broken loose and was believed to have sunk but had not, awash and practically invisible. By the time Fuller finally did see the wreck, it was too late to avoid hitting it and the bottom was ripped out of the *Lycomedes*. The author describes what happened in various parts of the ship during the fourteen minutes that elapsed before it went down. In that short time several men died—in the engine room, in the galley, on the bridge, in the radio room, in the chief engineer's cabin, and on the forward centrecastle deck. Poor judgment, delayed reactions, panic, self-sacrifice, loyalty to friends, great courage, dedication to duty, and bad luck all played a part in the last moments of the ship. Two liferafts with men aboard were launched, and there were hopes that they would be rescued by two ships which were only an hour away. However, many crew members went down with the ship.

The author has done a superb job of character depiction in the brief alternate paragraphs given to each section of the ship. The tension is so high from the very first that the reader feels compelled to put the book down for relief from time to time before continuing the story.

In a book talk the speaker can set the scene and that is enough to attract those who like action-packed sea stories, pages 7–31.

A reader who found this book exciting might also be introduced to *A Night to Remember* in which Walter Lord describes the experiences of numerous passengers on the ill-fated *Titanic* which went down after hitting an iceberg. A more recent tragedy at sea is recorded in *Collision Course* by Alvin Moscow. Moscow tells of the *Andrea Doria*, a palatial Italian liner, that sank after colliding with the *Stockholm*, a Swedish ship, again with loss of life. *Serpent's Coil* by the versatile author, Farley Mowat, tells of two salvage ships, the *Lillian* and the *Josephine*, operating out of Halifax, Nova Scotia, and of the sinking ships they rescued or attempted to rescue during one hurricane season. Joan and Clay Blair in *Return from the River Kwai*

give the true story of what happened to some 2000 Australian and British prisoners of war on their way to Japan when their unmarked ships were torpedoed by American submarines. Only a few of the men survived several terrible days in the water, clinging to wreckage or lifeboats before they were rescued and then only by chance by those same submarines.

CAMPBELL, SHELDON

Lifeboats to Ararat

1978. Times Books.

At one time a zoo worker and now a trustee of the San Diego Zoo, Sheldon Campbell has a wide knowledge of zoo history and problems. He stresses the fact that zoos are the only hope for the survival of species which are becoming rare because of human encroachment into their habitats. He cites the Fauna Preservation Society and its efforts to save the Arabian oryx, the San Diego Wild Animal Park for breeding cheetahs, and Gerald Durrell's Jersey Zoo for its work with marmosets. It is difficult for zoos to acquire a new supply of wild animals for several reasons: many wild creatures are now rare; laws in some countries now prohibit the removal of animals from their native habitats; and prices of exotic animals are for the most part exorbitant. Campbell discusses ways in which animals must adapt to captivity and outlines methods that zoos have used to help them make adjustments to new living conditions more easily. He emphasizes the importance of keepers and tells how several have coped with difficult situations. Campbell covers the work of veterinarians, pathologists, endocrinologists, and laboratory technicians who work in some zoos in order to keep the animals healthy and do research in causes of deaths, in artificial insemination, and in cryonics. He discusses what public relations has done or can do for zoos and some of the mistakes the public relations people have made. He tells anecdotes about several animals, among them a blue bear, a subspecies of the American black bear, which had eluded his captors for some time in Alaska; the spectacled bear named Houdini because it was quite an escape artist; Otis, an intelligent orangutan, also always looking for some way to escape; Krinkles, an aardvark, which almost lost its tongue to a gelada baboon; Dolly, a female gorilla that had to be taught how to take care of her baby; and Divi, a tiny, orphaned, wild Ceylonese elephant that had been transported from Sri Lanka to the San Diego Zoo with great difficulty.

In his absorbing account Campbell has combined descriptive chapters and anecdotes to provide an entertaining but also informative book for those seriously interested in animals. From it young people will discover how important well-run zoos are becoming and what opportunities there are for many different kinds of work in connection with them.

The following incidents are suitable for book talks. A Bengal tiger walked out of his cage when a preoccupied keeper left the door open. The veterinarian and a few keepers with no weapons managed to drive it back to its cage, pages 84–86. An elephant refused to obey anyone except his own keeper, even when the man was in traction in a hospital, pages 86–91. A keeper saved an old gentleman who climbed into a pen to get a close-up camera shot of a crocodile, pages 95–96. The story of Krinkles is also a possibility, pages 105–7.

Gerald Durrell, who has written a number of books about collecting wild animals for zoos and about establishing his own zoo on the Island of Jersey, tells in *The Stationary Ark* what the purposes of a zoo should be and how zoos should be operated if humans are to assume their obligation of preserving the wild creatures of the planet. Although he also enlivens his book with actual experiences with animals, he is even more serious and concerned than Campbell is. Dr. Bernhard Grzimek was among the first men to emphasize the great need for people to make a concerted effort to preserve the earth's wild animals whose numbers were decreasing so rapidly. Therefore it is fitting that his book *The Serengeti Shall Not Die* be mentioned here. Not all young people will have read it. The librarian might also suggest *Assignment: Wildlife** by Anne La Bastille.

CAMUS, ALBERT

The Stranger

1946. Knopf.

When Monsieur Meursault's mother died at the Home for Aged Persons fifty miles from Algiers, the young man asked his employer for two days off so that he might attend the funeral. Because he and his mother had never been very close, he had seen her infrequently after she entered the Home three years earlier. As a result he felt no great sadness at her death. From a sense of obligation he did sit beside the coffin all night and in the morning attended the funeral. He returned to Algiers immediately and had the weekend to recuperate from the trip. On Saturday morning he went to the beach and there chanced to meet Marie Cardona who had worked in his office for a short time. They dated often after that and she was soon sleeping with him. Raymond Sintès, a young neighbor, asked Meursault to help him with a difficulty he was having with his mistress, a Moorish girl. One night Raymond beat up the girl and neighbors called the police. After that episode Raymond discovered that the girl's brother and two of his Arab friends were shadowing him. On a weekend Raymond invited Meursault and Marie to visit some friends of his who had a cottage at the beach. After an early lunch the men went for a walk and encountered the three Arabs. A fight developed in which Raymond was wounded by a knife and the Arabs fled. Before the fight Raymond had handed his gun to Meur-

sault to hold in case he needed help. In the late afternoon Meursault went for a walk alone and encountered the girl's brother. Drawing Raymond's gun, he fired five shots into the man. The rest of the story is concerned with Meursault's days in prison and his trial. The prosecution attempted to prove that he was a cold-blooded person with criminal tendencies and used the fact that he had not apparently mourned his mother as a proof of his hardheartedness. His own attorney did not present convincing witnesses in his defense and the jury gave him the death penalty, decapitation in public. Meursault refused any contact with the prison chaplain. He felt that his own rationalization about the deaths of his mother and himself was satisfying to him, that he needed no outside assistance.

Educators feel that young people should be introduced to this highly regarded author. His books are small and not particularly difficult to read. In *The Stranger,* Camus brings out the futility that can exist in a person's life.

It is better to introduce this book to individual readers than to use it in a book talk unless for a class that must read a modern classic. The speaker can use part of the foregoing summary for an introduction.

The librarian can also suggest *The Plague* in which Camus describes the experiences of Dr. Rieux and several friends who took care of people during an epidemic of the plague that killed hundreds in Oran in the 1940s. In *The Fixer* Bernard Malamud has created a more likable character in Yakov Bok, a victim of a miscarriage of justice arising from prejudice against the Jews in Kiev. Yakov had made the employees working under him stop cheating the factory owner and they, to get even, accused him of committing a ritual murder.

CARSON, RACHEL

Silent Spring

1962. Houghton Mifflin.

After World War II, without any thought to the consequences, individuals and local, state, and federal governments began to spray the countryside and buildings with very dangerous chemicals in an effort to kill insects and weeds. Poisons in insecticides formerly were natural ones but today they are synthetic and much more virulent. This book has a chapter on each of three elements of nature which are affected by poisonous sprayings. Beginning with water, Carson cites specific instances of people and cattle becoming ill and explains how poisons seep into the groundwater and hence into our drinking water. Many pollutants cannot be identified by the tests ordinarily used in determining the safety of drinking water and it is difficult, if not impossible, to remove some pollutants. Soil is her next choice of subject. Bacteria, algae, and fungi along with earthworms and in-

sects aid in the deterioration of organic matter and the production of soil. Some poisons can upset the balance of populations in the soil, which in turn can affect its productivity. Because some insecticides invade plant tissue and herbicides too have been developed, her third topic is plants. Spraying with herbicides kills plant life indiscriminately, the desirable as well as the unwanted. Chemical pesticides inadvertently have killed great numbers of birds, mammals, and fish. Carson warns that chlorinated hydrocarbons are difficult to wash away from fruits and vegetables and therefore can affect humans directly when they consume these foods. She suggests that because poison sprays are so destructive to all kinds of life, their use is immoral. After discussing the indiscriminate spraying from the sky which occurred when the United States Department of Agriculture seemed to adopt an end-justifies-the-means philosophy, she states that such spraying was ill advised, hastily conceived, poorly planned, and irresponsible. Carson deplores the ready availability of poisons. She also asserts that although there have always been some carcinogens in the environment, humans are the only form of life that can create cancer-producing substances. Not only does she discuss the ways in which nature fights back by developing strains of life resistant to chemicals, she also suggests other means of getting rid of insect pests.

This is still an important book. Carson's was one of the most influential voices protesting the use of chemical poisons. Although at first she was ridiculed and denounced, people soon realized she was speaking the truth. Young people interested in chemistry or environmental studies will be fascinated by the book. Carson wrote very well, was very well informed, and presented a very moving case against chemical poisons.

There are numerous incidents of poisoning that can be used in a book talk. See pages 44–46, 67–68, 89–96, 104–9, 129–35, and 155–61.

Suggest *The Poison That Fell from the Sky* by John Fuller. On July 10, 1976, the poison dioxin showered down on the town of Seveso, a suburb of Milan, Italy, as a result of a malfunction at a nearby chemical plant. Dioxin has a long life and can not easily be destroyed, so the people affected had to be permanently removed from their homes. Many have suffered physically from strange diseases and as yet no one is sure what the future holds for these families. *Since Silent Spring* by Frank Graham provides background information on Rachel Carson and her books and discusses the controversy aroused by the publication of *Silent Spring*. It also describes later disasters caused by pesticides, attempts by the chemical industry to muzzle possible opponents, and biological methods of combatting pests. The suspenseful novel *Wellspring* by Edward Hawkins demonstrates how quickly deadly poison could spread in a water system draining from the Rockies and take the lives of everyone west of the

mountains. *PBB: An American Tragedy* by Edwin Chen gives in horrifying detail the story of a mistake made by a Michigan animal feed manufacturer who added the highly toxic fire retardant PBB instead of magnesium oxide to a mix, thus killing thousands of dairy cattle and countless chickens, ducks, and other livestock and endangering the lives of millions of people who consumed milk, meat, and eggs from these contaminated animals. *Laying Waste: The Poisoning of America by Toxic Waters* by Michael Brown begins with his exposure of the dumping of hazardous wastes, including dioxin, into the Love Canal by the Hooker Chemical Company and the disastrous effects on nearby residents. He follows this tragic story with others that detail similar problems in various parts of the country.

CATHER, WILLA

Death Comes for the Archbishop

1927. Knopf.

This episodic tale of the 1850s concerns two French missionary priests who dedicated themselves to strengthening the influence of the Catholic church in the desert country of the Southwest. Life in the Southwest at this time was primitive and travel across its vastness arduous, but they felt that the Indians and Mexicans there were in need of spiritual guidance and comfort. Father Latour and Father Vaillant represent the two sides of the early church's effort to propagate the faith. Father Latour, who later became a bishop, was sophisticated, cultured, and contemplative, with a desire to perpetuate the power and beauty of the church as a force in the growing Southwest. Eventually his lifetime dream of a beautiful golden church came about in the construction in Santa Fe of the cathedral that melted fittingly into the hills and desert landscape. Father Vaillant, on the other hand, was a priest of the people who devoted himself to the comfort of individuals and to providing for the church's monetary and material needs. He loved people and they responded in kind. He never minded soliciting gifts for the church or the school he and Father Latour had established. This was how he had acquired two handsome, cream-colored mules, Contento and Angelica, one for himself and one for Father Latour. In one typical incident, word came that Father Vaillant lay ill with black measles in a distant village. While en route to help, Father Latour and his guide Jacinto lost their way in a snowstorm and had to take refuge in a mysterious Indian cave. To reach the cave, they had to go on foot and leave the mules to fend for themselves. Jacinto was sure they had not survived the storm. By the time they reached Father Vaillant, he was already recovering. Character vignettes of Don Antonio who helped provide the money for the cathedral and of Father Latour and his continual gathering of seeds, herbs, and plants to grow around the house of the priests and the church illuminate the story. Father Vaillant's inter-

view with Gregory XVI who gave him the Papal blessing for his valises full of sundry items is a charming touch. So brilliant is the characterization that the Archbishop's death is a moving literary experience.

Mature young people, regardless of their religious affiliation, are interested in this story of the early years of the Southwestern United States and the courage and accomplishments of the priests who worked among the people there.

The time the two priests stopped at Buck Scales's shack for the night and were warned by his wife that their lives were in danger makes a good story to use in a book talk, pages 64–77.

The early days in the Southwest also come alive in Shirley Seifert's *By the King's Command.* When the Spanish king ordered the inhabitants of the village of Los Adaes in east Texas to abandon it and come to San Antonio, Don Antonio, owner of a prosperous ranchero nearby, went along to help them on their long and tragic journey. Much happened during the six years before he was able to return home and lead those who survived east again to build a new village. The story includes Don Antonio's visit to Mexico City and his appearance before the Viceroy and the *audiencia.* There is a fine array of interesting characters, Spanish, Indian, mestizo, and a priest. *The Wonderful Country* by Tom Lea also is about the Southwest, but during a more recent period. Martin Brady as a young boy fled from Missouri to Mexico after shooting his father's killer. A family of peons took him in and eventually he rode guard for a powerful Mexican. Dissatisfied with that kind of life Martin returned to the southwestern United States and became a Texas Ranger. There are some colorful characters, good and bad, and some memorable scenes in Mexico and the United States. The history of the New Mexico area from 1801 to 1849 is told in *Far Mountains* by Frank O'Rourke through the life of Juan Obregon, a seventeen-year-old orphan. The youth was befriended by Blas Pelletier, a well-educated man living near Taos who had traveled the area extensively. Together they built their own small empire by smuggling as they watched Americans gradually extend their influence west of the Mississippi. This is a rousing story with some fine characterizations for the reader who enjoys books about the West.

CERAM, C. W.

Gods, Graves, and Scholars

1951. Knopf.

In the forenoon of an August day in A.D. 79 there were signs that Mount Vesuvius was about to erupt and that it would be a disaster of unparalleled dimensions. The sun darkened and smoke filled the sky. As the top of the mountain exploded, volcanic cinder and ash sifted down. Amid crashes and terrifying flashes of light, people ran

about screaming and animals fell dead. An avalanche of mud buried the entire city of Herculaneum. At Pompeii there was only a light fall of lighter debris, but the people were asphyxiated by sulphur fumes. When the sun came out twenty-eight hours later, Pompeii and Herculaneum had ceased to exist. Almost seventeen hundred years passed before the dead cities were resurrected from oblivion. Excavations were started in 1748 at the instigation of Maria Amalia Christine, the Queen of Naples, who was intrigued by the wealth of statuary in the palace gardens. Another engrossing story concerns Lord Carnarvon and Howard Carter who began the most important of all the Egyptian excavations during the first year of World War I. The discovery of the tomb of Tutankhamen was the prize in this undertaking that was to take years, for it was not until 1926 that the mummified, bejeweled body of the young Pharaoh was uncovered—one of the most exciting and widely publicized finds in the history of archaeology. The rooms of the tomb contained such artifacts as golden couches, statues, alabaster vases, and various shrines. It was also evident that robbers had invaded some of the outer chambers but had never reached the royal tomb itself. The account of Champollion and the reading of the Rosetta Stone, the decipherment of the inscriptions on the monument of Darius the Great, Leonard Woolley's famous excavations at Ur, and John Lloyd Stephens's discovery of the ruins of a great Mayan city are also discussed.

The fascinating stories told so vividly in this book have been arranged by cultural area rather than chronological order and serve as introductions to more detailed accounts of these archaeological discoveries. This volume also reveals the human foibles and quirks of many of the people who have made significant contributions to our knowledge of the past.

An exciting and dramatic event for a book talk is Howard Carter's discovery of the antechamber in the tomb of Tutankhamen, pages 180–87. For an amusing story tell of the purchase by John Lloyd Stephens of the old city of Copan from Don Jose Maria, pages 346–51. The exploration of the Sacred Well of Chichen Itza, pages 379–90, is another absorbing event.

For those craving an exciting read, suggest *Aku-Aku* by Thor Heyerdahl, who delves into the history of the ancient inhabitants of Easter Island and discovers ancient stone carvings and wooden inscribed tablets of immense value. Heyerdahl also solved the mystery surrounding the huge hand-hewn statues which adorn the island. Also suggest *The Tomb of Tutankhamen* by Harold Carter, a condensation of the three volumes written in the 1920s that details the tomb's discovery, its excavation, and its contents, while omitting the prefaces and discussion of related topics of the original publication. Because Carter wrote with great clarity and simplicity, his account is extremely interesting. Young people will also be interested in

Thomas Hoving's *Tutankhamun, the Untold Story*, which includes much information not found elsewhere. Hoving, former head of the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City, reveals the truth about the discovery of the tomb of Tutankhamun and the intrigues, power struggles, and controversies which followed the opening of the tomb. In *The Well of Sacrifice* Donald Ediger describes the latest and largest expedition to Chichen Itza for the purpose of recovering Mayan treasures from the sacred well and of seeking to understand how the sacrifices took place. Some earlier theories about the sacred rites have proved to be erroneous.

CHASE, MARY ELLEN

Windswept

1941. Macmillan.

The house called Windswept was as permanent, impregnable, and undisturbed by wind, storm, waves, or cold as the rocky Maine headland on which it stood. The people who came to live there seemed to partake of its serenity; even tragedy could not perturb them for long. Philip Marston had given his son John a ketch when the boy was ten and considered old enough to learn to sail. During the summers Philip and John sailed north along the Maine coast with Jan Pisek, a young Bohemian immigrant whom Philip had befriended. One autumn John was allowed to accompany Philip and Jan on their hunting trip along the coast and learned that his father intended to buy a large section of land and build on it. That land turned out to include the headland they all loved so much. After Philip sketched the plans for the house and barn, the trio drove in the stakes to mark their outlines. On Advent Sunday that year of 1880 fourteen-year-old John came into the possession of the land on which Windswept was to stand. His father, the victim of a freak shooting accident, was buried that day. Opposed by his stern, possessive grandmother but encouraged by James Lassiter, his guardian and his father's business partner, John built the house of his father's dreams. Jan, who had stayed close to John after the tragedy, became the caretaker at Windswept. John spent many vacations there. Mrs. Haskell, the lovable, meticulous housekeeper, and later, Jan's good-natured sister Philomena gave the home a strength and solidarity which became part of its charm. After four years at Harvard and three years of study in Germany, John married Eileen Lassiter who had spent several summers at Windswept with her older brother Julian. The young couple now made their home at Windswept. Philip and Ann, their children, loved the house, too, and were miserable when they were taken abroad or to New York for the winter. Although the author gives little detail about their lives and skips many years, what she does tell is so skillfully done that the reader feels no break in the story and is able to picture its wonderful characters clearly.

Sensitive young adults enjoy this family chronicle, which pivots around a homestead.

A book talk might tell of the voyage up the Maine coast in 1880, the closeness of the boy, his father, and Jan, and the plan for the house, pages 38–61. If the speaker wishes to include Philip's death, it follows on the next two pages.

Sagamore Hill near Oyster Bay, New York, was the house in which the Theodore Roosevelts and their six children spent vacations and holidays. When Mr. Roosevelt became President, national and foreign dignitaries visited there and were favorably impressed by the simple way of life an American family enjoyed. The rollicking story of this family is told in *The Roosevelt Family at Sagamore Hill* by Hermann Hagedorn. A book about another family home and the people who lived in it for several generations is told by Rumer Godden in *China Court*. When Mrs. Quin, Tracy's grandmother, died, Tracy inherited the old rundown house that would have to be sold unless she married Peter St. Omer within a week. Peter was almost a stranger, but he loved the old house as much as she did and did not want to see it go out of the family. Although neither of the young people had money to rehabilitate the house, they decided to marry anyway. The discovery of a treasure in the house that would pay for the necessary repairs and renovation is a total surprise to all. *Bless This House* by Norah Lofts tells of Merravay, a house built for Thomas Rowhedge in 1577 and lived in by various families until 1952. In that year a descendant of an American Thomas Rowhedge fell in love with the old house and bought it, feeling that he had come home. The story is necessarily episodic and Lofts has created a number of unusual characters among the various residents of Merravay throughout its existence.

COLLIER, RICHARD

1940: The Avalanche

1979. Dial/James Wade.

The events of one year near the outbreak of World War II are vividly described by an Englishman who served in the Royal Air Force from 1942 to 1946. The author of a number of earlier books on that war, he includes in this narrative not only the principal actors in the conflict – Hitler, Mussolini, Chamberlain, Churchill, Franco, Mannerheim, and Roosevelt – but also some of the little people who took part: Brock, Mayor of Narvik; Polly Peabody, with the American-Scandinavian Field Hospital; Geoffrey Blackstone, an officer on the London Fire Brigade; and the Bech family. Early in 1940 the French were confident that the Maginot Line was impregnable; even so, French morale was low. It would have been lower had they realized that the Germans would so easily get around both ends of those fortifications. Although the British had sent 390,000 troops to

France, most Englishmen believed that the German homefront would collapse and the British armed forces would not have to fight. The British soldiers stationed in France were enjoying themselves. The German troops were so well equipped and trained that when they crossed into Denmark and invaded Norway there was little either country could do. Although the British did make an attempt to oust the Germans in Norway, they were so ill prepared and badly equipped that they were ineffective and had to retreat. Next the Germans advanced around the ends of the Maginot Line, forcing the British to retreat to Dunkirk from whose beaches 338,226 men were finally rescued, although some 40,000 were captured and imprisoned. Even this rescue would not have been possible had not Hitler halted his troops. France surrendered but Churchill appealed for aid to the United States, which at the time was neutral. President Roosevelt did find ways to send aid, even though American isolationists were outraged. Britain, which was so much in need of guns that some were even taken out of museums for use, did an amazing job of organizing for the production of planes and guns to counteract an expected German attack across the channel. The author describes the devastating bombing attacks and the dogfights between fighter planes. The Germans expected to destroy the Royal Air Force within just a few days to enable the Germans to invade England, but they never did accomplish this. Hitler then decided to concentrate on destroying Russia first. The British, fearful that Germany would take over the French fleet and gain control of the Mediterranean, gave the French fleet a choice of four courses of action. Admiral Gensoul refused to take orders from the British, who had no alternative but to destroy the French ships with a great loss of French lives. The book also covers the German submarine attacks on Allied shipping in the Atlantic, as well as the German plan to take over South America, which failed. Japan is referred to because she did join the Axis in 1940, but war in the Pacific was to come after 1940.

Collier's account of the year 1940 is very readable, and anyone interested in history should be encouraged to read it. After the experiences of France and England in World War I it is incredible that they could have been so ill prepared for World War II.

Numerous small episodes about the evacuation at Dunkirk can be worked into a book talk, pages 101–9. The bombing of Coventry could also be used, pages 250–56.

In *The City That Would Not Die* Collier describes what happened to a dozen or more people on the night of May 10, 1941, when 358 German bombers on the first sortie and 147 on the second hit London with 608 tons of high explosives and 86 tons of incendiaries. An important event at the beginning of World War II is described in the very moving book, *There Shall Be No Night*, by Robert Sherwood. Dr. Kaarlo Valkonen, a Finn and recent winner of the Nobel Prize for medicine, his American wife Miranda, and their son Erik lived in

Helsinki. Kaarlo could not believe that the Russians would attack Finland but they did. Erik joined the ski troops while Kaarlo went to Viipuri to help establish hospitals for those fighting on the Mannerheim Line. Knowing that Poland and Czechoslovakia had already fallen, the Valkonens did not have much hope that Finland could hold out against so strong and vast an enemy. The citizens' (probably Nowegians') reaction to the invasion of their small mining town by German soldiers at the beginning of World War II is the poignant theme of *The Moon Is Down* by John Steinbeck. Herbert Werner, a German U-boat captain during World War II, in *Iron Coffins* describes the terrible destruction of shipping in the Atlantic in the early days of the war. Later when Allied ships were given better protection by planes and fast destroyers, the Germans lost most of their submarines.

COLLINS, LARRY, AND LAPIERRE, DOMINIQUE

Is Paris Burning?

1965. Simon & Schuster.

In telling the story of Paris in the last days of German occupation, the authors have drawn upon events in the lives of countless people, civilian and military, men and women, French, German, American, and Swedish. The Allies had landed in Normandy in June and were pushing steadily eastward. De Gaulle, who wanted to control postwar France, needed to be the first to enter Paris to accomplish his aim, but had been unable to convince the High Command that Allied soldiers should liberate Paris. Had the Allies entered the city, they would have to supply it with food and fuel, and that they could ill afford to do. Besides, making a detour to do it would give the retreating Germans a chance to dig in east of the Seine. General Dietrich von Choltitz was called to Hitler's headquarters and put in charge of German troops in Paris. He was known to be very loyal to Hitler, never questioning an order. Choltitz was dismayed when he saw Hitler because the Führer seemed to have become a senile old man. One of the German generals in Paris told Choltitz when he arrived that every bridge had been mined and that every gas, electric power, and water facility was ready to be sabotaged. Pierre Charles Taittinger, Vichy mayor of Paris, came to see Choltitz and was warned that Choltitz would have to destroy certain parts of the city in order to delay the Allies. Taittinger asked Choltitz to step out on the balcony where he then pointed out some of the city's landmarks, saying that a general often had to destroy but rarely had an opportunity to preserve. Choltitz listened and then commented that he would have to do his duty. However, as time passed he became more and more reluctant to destroy Paris, in spite of the orders to do so which streamed to him from Hitler. Inside Paris there were two groups trying to seize control—the Gaullists and the Communists.

The latter were particularly strong and believed the time had arrived when the people were ready for an insurrection. The Gaullists wanted to avoid this if possible. Both groups decided to try to gain control of the city on the same day. They fired on the Germans, who in turn ordered tanks out to quell the disturbance; all sides lost men. The Swedish Consul, Raoul Nordling, finally organized a cease-fire, but the truce fell apart because the Communists refused to abide by it, their leader saying that for them to gain control of Paris was worth 200,000 dead. De Gaulle landed at Cherbourg but General Eisenhower still refused his request for troops. Choltitz suggested to Nordling that he try to influence the Allies; perhaps if they entered Paris before all the German reinforcements arrived, Paris could be saved. At this point Nordling suffered a heart attack but he did manage to send word to Eisenhower. There also was enough pressure from other sources to convince the general that some French troops should be diverted to Paris. Meanwhile fighting inside Paris became vicious. The Germans blew up the bridges and many of the buildings along the river. When some of the French troops approaching Paris ran into heavy German opposition, General Bradley ordered the Fourth Division (U.S. Infantry) not to wait for the French but to slam in and liberate Paris. The German reinforcements never did materialize; they had expected Choltitz to destroy the city without them. The authors discuss the progress of each group of Allied soldiers as they pushed into Paris. The 20,000 German troops still remaining there were determined not to surrender and the battles that followed are described. Finally Choltitz had to surrender, but he had the satisfaction of knowing that history would not judge him harshly. He had not destroyed Paris.

The authors tell a very dramatic story, with dozens of touching incidents involving individuals, some tragic and some joyous. The suspense is very high throughout. It seems as though the Allied troops will never reach Paris after they were given permission to go there, and the reader wonders where in the world they are and what they are doing. It is interesting to learn that many Germans too loved Paris and did not want to see it destroyed.

There are in this book many episodes suitable for a book talk. A favorite one concerns Hitler's plan for the total destruction of Paris and Choltitz's gradual determination not to follow orders, sections #6, #7, #18, and the latter part of #24 in "The Menace" in which Taittinger talks with Choltitz.

A number of questions will probably occur to young people who have read the book above. Answers to most of those can be found in the very readable books by John Toland. *The Last 100 Days* is based on interviews with hundreds of people and on several thousands of primary sources and covers all phases of the war in Europe. Also suggest his *Battle: The Story of the Bulge* which is an hour-by-hour reconstruction of Hitler's last desperate attempt to turn the German retreat in the West into a victory.

COLLINS, WILKIE

The Moonstone

[1878]

When the Moonstone, an enormous yellow diamond, was stolen from the forehead of the Moon-God in a Brahmin shrine, a curse had been placed on those who possessed it. Years later the sacred jewel came into the hands of a British officer, John Herncastle, during a battle with the Indians. He took the gem to England, and at his death it was left to his niece, Rachel Verinder. Despite precautions to guard the house, the Moonstone disappeared the first night Rachel had it. In order to help recover the stone, several persons closely connected with the family were asked to write what they knew about the diamond and the events surrounding its disappearance. Mr. Betteredge, the steward of the household, is the first narrator. Although a bit wordy, he gives a good picture of each person present on the fateful night. Lady Verinder is the mistress of the house and a favorite of the old man. Rachel, who is her daughter, seems determined to obstruct the police investigation. Franklin Blake, the young cousin who delivered the diamond to Rachel on her birthday, is in love with her. Godfrey Ablewhite has also come to help celebrate the birthday and asks Rachel to marry him. Rosanna Spearman, the second maid, has a prison record and so comes under suspicion. Miss Clark, a poor relative of the Verinders and a self-righteous do-gooder, throws more light on the mystery as the second narrator. Mr. Matthew Bruff, the Verinder family lawyer and the third storyteller, prevents what would have been an unfortunate marriage between Rachel and Godfrey. He is warned that within a year the Moonstone will reappear, and this time the Indians who are trying to regain possession of it will not fail. Franklin Blake picks up the narrative at this point. He decides that his future happiness depends upon the solution of the diamond's mysterious disappearance. He finally unravels the mystery and also wins the love of Rachel.

Because of the involved plot, this book appeals to young people of mature reading ability who enjoy interesting character delineation and an unusual technique for creating suspense. Most modern mystery stories are not in the same class with this book.

A brief outline of events leading up to the stone's disappearance will "sell" the book to readers in a book talk.

Collins also wrote *Woman in White*, another mystery in which different people tell of their part in the events. Two evil-doers, Sir Percival Glyde and Count Fosco, decide to take advantage of the resemblance between Sir Percival's wealthy wife, Laura, and a white-clad girl who has escaped from an asylum. With Laura out of the way, they will inherit her money. *The Mysteries of Udolpho* by Ann Radcliffe is another long, involved mystery and love story. Emily St. Aubert, a demure, beautiful girl, had been tenderly reared by doting parents. Upon their deaths she was entrusted to her aunt's

care and thus was exposed to many dangers and terrors engineered by the unprincipled man her scheming aunt had married. Love triumphs at the end when Emily escapes.

CONRAD, JOSEPH

Lord Jim.

1900. Doubleday.

We all dream of doing heroic deeds perhaps, but in a real-life crisis how would we act? Jim, too, had had his heroic imaginings but until his early twenties, when he became chief mate on the *Patna*, there had been no real opportunity to test or prove his courage. The old tramp steamer was forging her way across the Indian Ocean one night with eight hundred Mecca-bound pilgrims aboard, when a collision with something submerged tore a hole in the ship. The captain, convinced that the *Patna* would sink and knowing that there were not enough lifeboats for all the passengers, ordered the officers to lower a boat so that they could get away safely before an approaching storm struck. Jim scorned their cowardice and was determined to go down with the ship, but suddenly and impulsively he jumped overboard to join the officers. Their boat was sighted by another ship the next day, and the men were brought into port where they reported the sinking of the *Patna*. Later they learned that their ship had been picked up by a French gunboat and towed into Aden. After the painful inquiry which followed, Jim and the other officers had their certificates canceled and were forbidden ever to work on a ship again. At this point Captain Marlow, narrator of the story, became interested in Jim and found work for him with a ship chandler. After about six months some reference to the *Patna* made him leave that job and move on, though no one knew of his connection with the ship. This happened again and again, until finally Marlow helped locate a place for Jim in Patusan, a remote spot in the Celebes. It was two years before Marlow could stop to see him, but he found him well established, with the love and respect of the natives, a house of his own, and married to a part-white girl named Jewel. He was watched over and protected by a faithful servant and his devoted wife, but neither of them could save him from his fate.

A fine character novel, *Lord Jim* requires that the reader bring understanding and intelligence for a full appreciation of the story. Mature readers will meditate on the moral involvement and eagerly read Jim's pursuit of a compensating action.

For a book talk use pages 10–31 and 83–111 for a description of the scene on the ship when Jim makes his fateful decision.

In *Typhoon*, also by Conrad, the *Nan-Shan* took on two hundred Chinese coolies going home to Fo-kien province, each carrying a wooden chest containing among other things his savings in silver dollars. Most of the story describes the typhoon which the ship

encountered and the damage it did to the coolies. No one aboard thought the ship would survive but it did, looking like a wreck salvaged from the bottom of the sea. In *The Nigger of the 'Narcissus,'* Conrad painstakingly reveals the characters of the ship's officers and crew as they encounter a vicious storm and as they deal in their various ways with a huge black man who claims to be dying but who some are convinced is malingering. Some librarians have used *Heart of Darkness* by Conrad with success. It describes the hazardous experiences of a captain of a steamboat who was hired to go up an African river and pick up ivory which agents had collected at various stations. On the way he met the foremost agent named Kurtz and learned that the natives had begun to regard the man as a god.

CRICHTON, MICHAEL

The Great Train Robbery

1975. Knopf.

Edward Pierce, who planned the great train robbery in 1855, was a tall, handsome man in his early thirties, a figure familiar in London social circles who counted among his acquaintances many well-known people. Because he also knew people from the city's slums, he recruited a number of the most skilled criminals in London. One, Robert Agar, was a specialist in keys and safe-breaking. At a dinner given by Henry Fowler to which Pierce was invited, Pierce learned how closely guarded was the gold which went abroad each month to pay the British soldiers fighting in the Crimean campaign. Fowler bragged about the security and asked his guests how it could be any more secure. Pierce learned that the safes in the railway car, especially made for carrying the gold, required two keys to open them, this being before the days of time and combination locks. Two keys for each safe were kept in the railway office. Mr. Trent, president of Huddleston and Bradford Bank where the gold was shipped from, had one and Mr. Fowler had one he wore around his neck at all times. Pierce and Agar cased the railway office and found it was so closely guarded that a man would have only five minutes to get in, unlock the cupboard, and make wax impressions of the keys. Pierce hired an accomplished pickpocket to jostle Mr. Trent on a day when he might be carrying the key in order to determine in which pocket he carried it. Leaving nothing to chance, Pierce found a way to cultivate the acquaintance of Mr. Trent. He discovered Trent's interest in sporting dogs and told him about a champion that he knew was for sale. Pierce was invited for tea and introduced to Miss Trent, almost thirty and a spinster. Pierce squired her until he found out the probable location of the key but she, of course, had no idea that she was divulging a secret. Crichton describes how Pierce and Agar got into Trent's home, found the key, made a wax impression, and got away safely. Pierce obtained an impression of Fowler's key with the

help of a prostitute. He and Agar also managed to take impressions of the keys in the railway office in spite of an extra guard there. When the day of the robbery arrived, Agar was smuggled into the baggage car hidden in a very smelly coffin, from which the guard there who was cooperating let him out. The baggage car was locked from the outside, so Pierce had to make his way along the top of the fast-moving train and, hanging down over the side of the baggage car, remove the lock from the door. Then he climbed down and helped take the gold out of the safes and off the train, almost getting caught going back to his compartment. It was months before the police identified anyone connected with the robbery. Most of the participants, including Pierce, were picked up and brought to trial. Pierce, who confessed, managed to escape from the van taking him to prison and was never seen again. Agar was transported to Australia where he eventually ended up a wealthy man.

The story is fun to read because the planning of the robbery and its commission seem so impossible. The narrative certainly holds the reader's interest to the end.

Any of the following incidents could be worked into a book talk. Teddy Burke consents to jostle Mr. Trent, pages 29–32, 38–41. Clean Willy Williams escapes from escape-proof Newgate Prison when Pierce tells him to do it, pages 71–74. Clean Willy and Agar manage to get the key impressions in the railway office, pages 115–27.

Piers Paul Read in *The Train Robbers* describes in detail how in 1963 two gangs of thugs, thieves, and hold-up men cooperated in planning and carrying out a "heist" of more than two million pounds from a Glasgow-to-London train. Although the planning and preparation for this more recent robbery were quite different from those described by Crichton, Read's account is no less exciting. In *The Scott-Dunlap Ring* George LaFountaine describes some of the bank robberies carefully engineered by Jim Dunlap and Robert Scott, two famous post-Civil War period criminals but very likable characters. Their methods are no longer practical, but are fun to read about.

DAVIS, BURKE

To Appomattox

1959. (Rinehart) Holt.

By the first of April 1865, the Union Army under Grant threatened to encircle the Confederate capital and cut off the last railroad connections. Because food was scarce, horses and mules as well as humans were on scanty rations. The warehouses that had been converted into makeshift hospitals were crowded with the wounded; soldiers were deserting in such great numbers that in the trenches men were twenty feet apart. Jefferson Davis knew the end was near and sent his wife and family to North Carolina. In describing the first nine days in April, the author moves from one participant or observer to

another to present a vivid picture of the closing days of the Civil War as witnessed by officers, gunners, infantrymen, and civilians. By April 2 the Union forces had swept toward Petersburg, and General Lee warned President Davis and his associates to evacuate. The next day Richmond was burning, and local rowdies were pillaging army stores and warehouses. As the Union troops entered the city, they offered protection to the Southern women who remained and began putting out the fires. On April 4, President Lincoln reached Richmond by boat, talked with Southern leaders, and responded to the cheers of the freed slaves. Retreats, skirmishes, and desertions plagued the dwindling Confederate troops, but Lee was determined not to surrender. Eventually defeat seemed inevitable despite the willingness of many Southern soldiers to fight, and Lee agreed to meet Grant on April 9 at the Appomattox Court House to discuss terms of surrender.

The day-by-day method of presentation and the use of actual accounts make this a particularly gripping book for those interested in the Civil War period.

It is preferable to recommend the title individually than to use it for a book talk.

So many fine Civil War books have been written that the librarian will have no difficulty in recommending follow-up titles from the collection. However, following are several to suggest. Bruce Catton has produced in *This Hallowed Ground* a truly graphic and dramatic tale, beginning in 1856 with Senator Sumner's stinging oration against admitting Kansas as a slave state and continuing through the bloody years of the war, the surrender at Appomattox, and Lincoln's assassination. This author, a Civil War scholar, has written several other excellent books on his specialty which can be recommended. In the introduction to *My Enemy, My Brother* Joseph E. Persico, the author, asks what it was that led men to enlist in the Union and Confederate armies and slaughter each other in such frightful numbers. Using letters, diaries, and journals as well as books he tells what happened to specific soldiers, officers, and doctors on both sides during the three-day battle at Gettysburg – but the question for the most part really remains unanswered. For a different view of the Civil War, suggest *Ghost Ship of the Confederacy* by Edward C. Boykin that tells of Raphael Semmes, a daring, blockade-running Southern captain who took a huge toll of Yankee shipping; branded as a pirate, he was hunted down by the North's fastest cruisers. In *Tin Can on a Shingle* William Chapman White describes the difficulties the inventors of ironclad vessels had in persuading their governments, Union and Confederate, to accept the idea of such construction. Eventually both governments gave in, the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac* were launched, and the battle ensued which rendered the wooden navies of the world obsolete. Be sure to suggest *John Brown's Body* by Stephen Vincent Benét. The prelude, a description

of conditions on a slave ship crossing the Atlantic, is followed by a history of the Civil War in poetry, beginning with John Brown's raid on Harper's Ferry. Benét has woven into the history the stories of men and women from the North and the South. This very dramatic presentation will not be difficult to understand by the person who has had any experience in reading poetry.

DELORIA, VINE

Custer Died for Your Sins: An Indian Manifesto

1969. Macmillan.

Vine Deloria, a Standing Rock Sioux and formerly executive director of the National Congress of American Indians, comes from a long line of Indian leaders. He is well qualified to present the Indians' view of the whites in the United States and the consequences of white behavior toward the American Indians. There are 315 distinct tribal communities in this country and only about thirty get any kind of federal services. That does not mean that there are no Task Force Reports made concerning them. The trouble is nothing ever happens after a report is made and no funds are appropriated. In spite of this neglect the Indians are making progress. Deloria comments on the fact that the United States government signed over 400 treaties and agreements with Indian tribes, every one of which it has broken, and outlines what the government could do to atone for past injustices. Though many white people may feel guilty about the way Indians were deprived of their lands in the early days of this country, Deloria points out that they really need not look too far back into the past to feel guilty and includes a chapter on the disastrous policy of termination attempted by Congress from 1954 to 1964. One of the major problems of the Indians, the loss of their lands, was caused by missionaries. The author also points out the damage done to Indian society by Christian missions from the early days of white invasion. And speaking of invasions, every summer anthropologists invade the reservations and here Deloria's sense of humor is evident as well as his irony, as he comments on universities spending money for useless studies instead of investing it in buildings and businesses for Indians to make use of. The Bureau of Indian Affairs too receives some well-deserved criticism and Deloria makes a number of suggestions for constructive action the bureau could take immediately "to change completely the rate and manner of progress of the Indian people." When it comes to a consideration of civil rights, the problems of the blacks, he says, are altogether different from those of the Indians. It is interesting to read a Native American's opinion of the black struggle for equal rights. In conclusion Deloria looks at modern society and claims that white society is becoming tribalized itself, both economically and socially. He also discusses the contribution that the Indians can make to the country's laws and the progress which they will make in many ways in the future.

This is a book that many young people should be encouraged to read because it contains much food for thought and discussion. Deloria writes well; he has a sense of humor; he is adept at putting his finger on the white man's weaknesses and making him wince.

Try building a book talk on the Indians' comparison of their fate with that of the Jews in Egypt under the pharaohs and go on to some of the promises made in treaties with the Indians, pages 31–35. A book talk can also be made from the chapter on anthropologists, the one on missionaries, or on Indian humor.

Alvin Josephy in *Red Power* has collected documents beginning with a speech by Thomas L. Sloan, an Omaha Indian, which was delivered at a national conference of the Society of American Indians in 1911. The book includes reports, letters, policy statements, and other speeches concerning the problems of Indians, their right to be free from federal rule and run their own affairs.

DESMOND, ADRIAN J.

The Hot-Blooded Dinosaurs: A Revolution in Palaeontology

1976. Dial/James Wade.

In 1770 men working in the Maestricht chalk quarries unearthed the jaws of a monstrous animal, a find that was to have a profound effect on palaeontologists for several decades. Eventually the jaws reached Paris, where a young French scientist who had studied fossils became convinced that whole animal races had once existed on earth but had disappeared completely. Desmond traces the development of palaeontology from the excavation of this fossil and shows how numerous later discoveries gradually gave the world some knowledge of these long-lost creatures. By 1854 enough remnants of dinosaurs had been found for English scientists to name three species and try to reconstruct their bodies. The reconstructions looked like mammoth lizards and have little resemblance to the reconstructed bodies based on whole skeletons found in later years. Gradually scientists have decided that some kinds of dinosaurs were upright animals with small, weak forelegs that some scientists believed were vestigial. The largest of these creatures stood nearly twenty feet tall. It wasn't until 1969 that a speaker at the first North American Palaeontological Convention held at the Field Museum of Natural History in Chicago attempted to prove that dinosaurs, unlike the reptiles of today, had to be warm-blooded creatures. Otherwise, he said, they could not have had enough energy to stand, walk upright, pursue prey, and engage in combat—a revolutionary idea that had also been arrived at by a French scientist—and a theory that threw new light on the physiology of dinosaurs. Desmond makes an interesting observation by saying that for some reason the ancestors of mammals were relegated to an insignificant role in early history, whereas dinosaurs

were masters of the world for 120 million years. During this time, tiny mammals were developing and changes were talking place in their bodies as they adapted to their environment. What mystifies Desmond is why mammals stayed so small until after the dinosaurs disappeared. He also traces the development of birds, pointing out that in order to fly a bird must have feathers, flight muscles, and associated skeletal adaptations like the sternum. Why and how did these changes take place in reptiles which made it eventually possible for them to fly? A discovery in 1861 in Bavaria helped to explain the evolution of birds, but controversy raged for a long time over the subject. Finally Desmond speculates about what devastated the earth seventy million years ago and killed off all the large land animals.

This is a fascinating book for anyone interested in the history of the Mesozoic period. The author has advanced degrees in history and philosophy of science as well as in vertebrate palaeontology and is presently working in both fields at Harvard. Not only is he well versed in his subject, he also writes very well.

The illustration on page 34 shows the few bones found in 1854 from which a drawing was made of the whole prehistoric animal. This early attempt at reconstruction is quite a contrast to those made later after whole skeletons were found. A book talk can use this fact and include the story and drawings of the Diplodocus, which was eighty-seven feet long and stood on four legs, pages 113–21.

Although not so readable but containing a greater variety of illustrations, *Archosauria* by John C. McLoughlin can be recommended to young people wanting additional information on dinosaurs. *Men and Dinosaurs* by Edwin H. Colbert is not nearly so attractive as the foregoing books, but Colbert writes very well and has included much more interesting information about the experiences of the men who made important finds. Because this book was published in 1968, the newer titles cover the more recent discoveries as well as the older ones. It is possible that some young people would be entertained by reading *The Lost World* by Arthur Conan Doyle. A young cub reporter, Ed Malone, has a chance to go with Professor Challenger, a famous zoologist, to South America where living prehistoric animals are to be found in the interior of Brazil.

DICKENS, CHARLES

David Copperfield

[1850]

David Copperfield's father died six months before the boy was born. Miss Betsey Trotwood, his father's aunt, came to visit the day David was born and, disappointed that the baby was a boy, she left immediately and had nothing more to do with the family. Mrs. Copperfield had been left in comfortable circumstances and she and her

faithful servant Peggotty made a very happy home for the boy. One summer David went with Peggotty to visit her family at Yarmouth and when they returned home, he discovered that his mother had married Mr. Murdstone, whose maiden sister came to live with them. Between them the Murdstones frightened David so much that he was unable to do his lessons at all. They also tried to turn his mother into a meek, helpless woman unable to assume any responsibility. One day when Murdstone beat David, the boy bit him and the man decided to send him away to school. There David met two boys, Tommy Traddles and James Steerforth, who were to become lifelong friends. When David went home for the holidays, he found his mother had not recovered from the birth of a baby. Shortly word came to him at school that his mother and the baby had died. When David was ten, Murdstone sent him to London to work in a counting-house and made arrangements for him to live with the Micawber family. Mr. Micawber was an unusual man, always in debt and on the point of being ousted from his living quarters but always expecting good fortune to be just around the corner. David had to work long hours, provide his own food, and sell household articles for Mrs. Micawber in order for her to buy food for her family. When the Micawbers were evicted, David decided to run away and try to find his great-aunt. His search for her was a harrowing experience. Fortunately Aunt Betsey not only decided to keep him but also turned out to be a very loving person. She sent him to a good school and arranged for him to stay in the home of her lawyer, Mr. Wickfield. Agnes Wickfield, a little older than David, became his good friend and the two had many happy times together. The only cloud on the horizon was Uriah Heep, the lawyer's clerk and a fawning, unattractive person whom David disliked. After David finished school, Aunt Betsey paid a sizable premium so that he could be articled to the firm of Spenlow and Jorkins, proctors in Doctors' Commons. One day Spenlow invited David to dine at his home and the young man promptly fell in love with his daughter Dora. After overcoming many obstacles they were married, but she was never able to master housekeeping and was never a helpmate. Meanwhile Uriah Heep had been gaining control of Mr. Wickfield's affairs and had hired Mr. Micawber as clerk. Micawber soon caught on to Heep's dishonesty and spent the year gathering evidence against him before reporting it to David and his lawyer friend Traddles. They were able to take care of the matter. Dora, never very strong, went into a decline and died, leaving David devastated by grief. After some years abroad, he returned home, having decided that he had always loved Agnes. Eventually she consented to marry him.

This is a very long novel with many interesting, well-developed characters. David is a very naive young man who sometimes exasperates the reader because he is so unsuspecting and timid. There are several subplots which involve Traddles, the Peggottys, the Steer-

forths, and the Micawbers. In spite of the story's length, the interest never wanes. *David Copperfield* was Charles Dickens's favorite of all the books he had written up to the time of its publication.

The contrast between David's home life during his mother's widowhood and after her marriage to Mr. Murdstone may arouse an audience's feelings for the boy. See parts of chapters 2 and 4. David's experiences in trying to find his Aunt Betsey could also be used as a book talk. See the last pages of chapter 12 and the first few pages of chapter 13.

Dickens's *Great Expectations* could be used as a follow-up. Pip was destined to be a village blacksmith before he was informed that a benefactor had provided him with an opportunity to become a gentleman in London. Also suggest *The Way of All Flesh* by Samuel Butler, a biographical novel about a fictitious person, Ernest Pontifex. Reverend Pontifex was so strict that Ernest might almost be said to have been an abused child. Underdeveloped physically and subservient, he graduated from Cambridge about as naive as David Copperfield. He was ordained but got into trouble because of a girl and served six months in prison. He had his ups and downs for several years before he came into a fortune left him by his father's sister and found his proper niche in life.

DOSTOEVSKY, FYODOR

Crime and Punishment

[1866]

The story opens with a poor student Raskolnikov, clad in rags, entering the street from his garret and making his way to his pawnbroker's apartment — a place he had evidently had under surveillance for months. He is determined to commit murder. Loathing himself and his plot, he is impelled to proceed with his carefully thought-out plan and kills not only the old pawnbroker but her gentle half-sister Lizaveta, who happens by at the wrong moment. He has time only to take the woman's purse and to stuff his pockets with jewelry when he is terrified by a sound at the door and flees, narrowly missing other men who have come to the apartment. He apparently is not suspected at first by the police, but his queer actions and obsessive desire for information about the crime make even his friends begin to question his connection with the murders. The rest of the story involves the punishment for the crime. Raskolnikov endeavors to lead a normal life even though guilt and fear obsess him. One night he comes upon the scene of an accident and sees that Marmeladov, a man he had known slightly, has been run over by horses and a carriage. He accompanies the injured man home and gives the man's wife twenty roubles his mother had given him. This is the occasion for his first meeting with Sonia, Marmeladov's daughter, who had become a prostitute in order to help support the family. Raskolni-

kov's mother and sister had spoiled him, sacrificing in order to give him money. His sister had even agreed to a distasteful marriage which would mean increased financial assistance to her brother, but Raskolnikov is able to talk her out of this arrangement. She and their mother come to St. Petersburg and he introduces her to one of his own friends. During this time he surmises that the police suspect him, and he feels the net closing around him. He severs his connections with his family and friends, finally concluding that he faces two alternatives: suicide or confession. He decides to confess to Sonia and she persuades him to go to the police. When he is sentenced to eight years of hard labor in Siberia, the devoted Sonia follows him there to help him in his regeneration and to marry him when he is released.

This long, involved novel with several subplots is only for the mature reader. It is an interesting psychological study of a sensitive person who, driven to crime, suffers mental and physical aftereffects.

A book talk can summarize the first chapters, including the preparations for the crime and omitting the actual murders. Discussion groups would be a far more interesting use, since the moral values involved are sure to produce differences of opinion.

Another very long novel on crime and punishment but set in the United States is *An American Tragedy* by Theodore Dreiser. In it handsome, well-mannered Clyde Griffiths with little education and a background of poverty was given a job in his wealthy uncle's collar factory but otherwise ignored by the relatives. Lonely, Clyde dated Roberta, a pretty girl who worked in his department, although it was against the rules. Eventually he made her pregnant but meanwhile a girl from a wealthy family had offered him a place in her crowd and they fell in love. Clyde decided to dispose of Roberta but her death was so poorly planned that he was arrested shortly.

DUMAS, ALEXANDRE

The Three Musketeers

[1844]

When D'Artagnan was eighteen years of age, his father gave him a horse, fifteen crowns, a letter of introduction to M. de Treville, commander of the King's Musketeers, plus some good advice, and sent him to make his fortune at the court of Louis XIII of France. Before he had been in Paris long, he had managed to offend three of the King's Musketeers, and duels were arranged. When he met the first, Athos, he learned that his other two challengers, Aramis and Porthos, were Athos's seconds. Just as the duel was about to begin, five guardsmen from Cardinal Richelieu happened along, and a free-for-all took place from which the Musketeers and D'Artagnan came away victorious. As a result the four became bosom friends, al-

though D'Artagnan could not become a Musketeer until a vacancy occurred. The intrigue which furnishes the action of the story was the result of Cardinal Richelieu's having been spurned by Anne of Austria, wife of Louis XIII. Humiliated, the Cardinal tried to discredit Anne with the King and get his revenge. The Duke of Buckingham, the most powerful man in England, loved Anne, and Richelieu wanted to prove that Anne returned his love. One of the Queen's ladies had arranged a meeting between the Duke and the Queen, and at that time Anne had given her admirer twelve diamond aiguillettes, a present to her from Louis. The Cardinal, who seemed to have spies everywhere, learned of the Queen's gift to Buckingham and commissioned an accomplice in England, the Countess de Winter, to steal two of the aiguillettes and bring them back to him. He had the King plan a celebration and persuaded him to ask the Queen to wear the aiguillettes. The manner in which D'Artagnan became embroiled in the conspiracy and saved the day for the Queen is suspenseful and exciting. Although D'Artagnan is the heroic protagonist of the main plot and the three Musketeers have a part in it, each of these gallants has the lead in an interesting subplot.

Good readers, especially boys, who like an exciting, well-told story with a romantic background of historical intrigue enjoy this book very much. The loose morals of the period make having a mistress an accepted practice, which even as young a man as D'Artagnan took for granted.

A summary of the first part of the story is sufficient to interest potential readers.

It is a joy to meet again with Athos, Aramis, Porthos, and D'Artagnan in *Twenty Years After.* They have matured but still retain their love for one another and their readiness to become involved in perilous adventure. So they do not disappoint the reader. Young Edmund Dantes, accused falsely by jealous enemies, was arrested and imprisoned without an opportunity to defend himself. In *The Count of Monte Cristo,* also by Dumas, the reader learns how Dantes escaped from prison, found a fortune, and took revenge on his enemies. Alleyne Edricson had been raised in a monastery and had been given his twentieth year to go out into the world and learn what it was like before he decided what he would do with his future. He met Sir Nigel Loring, one of England's renowned knights, and followed him to the war in Spain. His adventures are described in *The White Company* by Arthur Conan Doyle.

DYSON, FREEMAN

Disturbing the Universe

1979. Harper.

Freeman Dyson is one of the "accomplished and articulate scientists" whom the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation asked to write an account of

his life in science so that the general public would better understand scientific enterprise. The book he chose to write not only succeeds admirably in describing his career in physics, it also sets forth the experiences and events that determined the direction of his work and interests. Dyson's father, an English musician, composer, conductor, and teacher, was somewhat disappointed that his son preferred science and mathematics; his mother was a lawyer with a fine literary background. When the boy chose on his own initiative to spend fourteen hours a day of his month-long Christmas vacation studying Piaggio's *Differential Equations*, they must have decided they had a genius on their hands. Although the younger Dyson disapproved of World War II, he worked with the Operational Research Section at a bomber command post in England. In 1947 he came to the United States, enrolling as a graduate student in physics at Cornell University where he studied under Hans Bethe and others who had worked on the atom bomb. A year later he transferred to Princeton to work under Robert Oppenheimer. Sometime between 1948 and 1955 he married a German girl and became a professor of physics at the Institute of Advanced Study at Princeton. He was often invited to teach or work on special projects during the summer at other universities. In 1955 Frederic de Hoffmann, a physicist who worked for General Dynamics, persuaded top management that the company engage in building nuclear reactors. When given permission to begin designing in 1956, he collected a team that included Edward Teller, Dyson, and some thirty other experts to work on the project; within three years General Atomic, the firm's subsidiary, began to build reactors. In 1958 Ted Taylor at General Atomic invited Dyson to come to San Diego to help develop a nuclear-powered spaceship which he believed would provide a much less costly method of space travel than the chemically propelled space vehicles the government and Wernher von Braun were working on. Dyson, who took a year's leave from Princeton for this project, says the months he spent on it were among the happiest of his life. They were unable to develop a nuclear device to propel their spacecraft which did not give off nuclear fallout and the project was abandoned. In the summers of 1962 and 1963 Dyson worked at the Arms Control and Disarmament Agency in Washington, D.C. Because the Eighteen-Nation Disarmament Conference was being held at that time, the ACDA was to prepare positions on two sets of negotiations—the test-ban negotiations with Russia and the disarmament negotiations. Dyson studied the Soviet policies and attitudes in detail and made recommendations based on his findings, which, he says, were filed and never seen again. He explains the mistakes he believes the United States made in dealing with Russia at that time. He goes on to discuss at some length the possibility of terrorists being able to construct and use a small nuclear bomb, the three types of civilizations which a Russian astronomer has suggested are possible in the universe, and the future of solar energy.

This well-written book contains a wealth of information and a variety of personal experiences that will interest really good readers, especially those who are scientifically oriented themselves. They will be intrigued with Dyson's thought experiments and with what he says about extraterrestrials. The author reads widely and comments on a number of books which will serve to introduce them to readers. He had a nice sense of humor and his stories about famous scientists will be enjoyed. Except for a bit of information about his parents, he tells almost nothing about his personal life, although he mentions his son briefly.

Chapter 2 has enough information about Dyson as a boy to serve as a book talk for a group of young people who are very good students.

The young person who wants more information on the *Orion*, the nuclear spaceship, should read John McPhee's *The Curve of Binding Energy*, the biography of Theodore Taylor who invited Dyson to work with him. In *The Cosmic Connection* Carl Sagan, a professor of astronomy and space sciences, reviews the progress the world, but particularly the United States, has made in space exploration and discusses the ways which can be used in attempting to contact intelligent beings on other planets and to communicate with them. See *The Starship and the Canoe** by Kenneth Brower for a book about Dyson's son George.

ECKERT, ALLAN W.

The Frontiersmen

1967. Little, Brown.

Simon Kenton at sixteen years of age was over six feet tall and well muscled. Afraid that he had killed the man whom he had beat up for marrying the girl he favored, Simon ran away from the family home in Prince William County, Virginia, in 1771. He wanted to go west but to do so he had first to acquire a gun, shoes, clothing, and staples. He soon discovered a sure way of finding work—by adopting the surname of the person to whom he was applying, he was often hired since he might just be a distant relative. While working his way westward he was fortunate to be invited to join a party of men more experienced in the woods than he and from them he learned a great deal about tracking, scouting, and shooting. His friends left him behind in the Fort Pitt area when they went on a mission for which he was still too inexperienced. However, in a month's time he had joined two other men going down the Ohio from Fort Pitt, one of whom told Simon about the canelands in Can-tuc-kee where the soil was rich and game plentiful. Simon was determined to find that place, but many things happened before he

finally saw it. In 1768 the Indians and whites had signed the Fort Stanwix Treaty which gave the whites the right to explore, hunt, and settle south of the Ohio River but forbade them to set foot on the river's north bank. The whites had broken the treaty repeatedly and killed many Indians. Because the Shawnees retaliated, Simon had his share of narrow escapes from them and earned a reputation for courage, ingenuity, and marksmanship. For these qualities he was chosen as a scout for the army raised at Fort Pitt in 1774 to put down the Indians. To tell the Indians' side of this story, which runs parallel with Simon's, Eckert introduces Blue Jacket, Cornstalk, Chief Black Fish, Chief Logan, and Tecumseh who played important roles. After another treaty was signed with the Indians that fall, Simon started down the Ohio with another nineteen-year-old, again looking for the canelands. This time they found the place and in the spring cleared about an acre of land, planting the first corn ever sown by whites in Can-tuc-kee country. That spring great numbers of whites came down the Ohio, seeking land on which to establish homes and continuing to kill Indians. In the fall of 1775 the Shawnees decided they again had to retaliate. The next spring hordes of people came west, even though the war between England and the colonies had broken out. Indian attacks grew stronger and more vicious; by 1777 many new settlements had to be abandoned and families began to move back east. Harrodsburg and Boonesboro were the only forts left in Kentucky. Simon became the hunter for Harrodsburg, risking his life daily to supply meat for the hungry people behind the fort's walls. In 1778 he was captured by the Shawnees, enduring and surviving terrible beatings and torture, thereby winning the respect of many Indians, even though they condemned him to death. He was rescued in the nick of time by the British. In 1779 more than half the Shawnees sadly withdrew west of the Mississippi, realizing they could never drive the whites from their lands, but those who remained inflicted awful atrocities on the settlers who retaliated with shockingly cruel and inhuman acts, a conflict that was not to end for many years. Eckert works into the story a number of famous persons, among them George Rogers Clark, Daniel Boone, Simon Girty, Anthony Wayne, and William Henry Harrison. In 1787 Simon married sixteen-year-old Martha Dowden but he was unable to settle down. He continued to roam the frontier, helping the settlers, acquiring more land for himself, scouting for the army, warning of enemy attacks, and spying on the Indians. Tecumseh, a great leader among the Indians, was determined to organize the tribes from all areas of the country to rise as one and eliminate the white invaders or drive them off the continent. The Indians joined the British during the War of 1812, as they had during the Revolution. They were victorious at first, but the tide eventually turned against them. When Tecumseh was killed, the Indians knew they had lost.

This is a very long, detailed book which portrays vividly the difficulties of the early settlers along the Ohio River and their determination to stay on the land they claimed. Atrocity after atrocity is described and one wonders that both whites and Indians could think of so many ways to kill and torture one another. In this accurate account of the years from 1771 to 1813, it is not possible for the reader to take sides in the struggles Eckert describes. Not only does he sympathize with both the Indians and the whites, but his account shows that there were admirable individuals and justification on both sides.

In this book there are innumerable episodes suitable for book talks. A few possibilities follow. On the sixth day after he ran away, Simon figured out how to appeal to the next family along his route and eventually was hired by Jacob Butler who operated a prosperous mill in Warm Springs, pages 17–19, 21–23. Simon kept Butler's surname for many years. A seventeen-year-old white boy, Marmaduke Van Swearingen, became an Indian by choice and adopted the name Blue Jacket, pages 19–21. Blue Jacket met Chief Logan, an Indian completely trusted by whites and Indians alike, pages 76–78. Renegade whites killed and mutilated three members of Logan's family, pages 79–82.

Another story of the Ohio River valley area is *The Crossing* by Winston Churchill. This is a somewhat old-fashioned but still enjoyable account of David Richie, a ten-year-old orphan who ran away and joined a family going to Kentucky at the outbreak of the American Revolution, making a name for himself as the drummer boy with George Rogers Clark's troops against the Indians, English, and French. He became a lawyer when he grew up, saw General Wilkinson's plan for a separate country west of the Alleghenies shattered, and married the most desirable girl in New Orleans. Although the locale of *Drums along the Mohawk* by Walter Edmonds is New York State instead of Ohio or Kentucky, its action too takes place during the American Revolution and is the result of the conflict between the Indians and white settlers who had taken over land the Indians claimed. *Shining Trail* by Iola Fuller, a powerful story about the Sauk Indians under the leadership of Chief Black Hawk, continues the history of the white settlement of fertile land on which Indians who were not wanderers lived. The Sauks finally were given one day to leave their homes or be wiped out. Another story of these days in Kentucky but told from a woman's point of view is *Hannah Fowler* by Janice Giles. When Samuel Moore died on the way to Boonesboro after an accident, leaving his daughter Hannah alone in the wilderness, she was befriended by Tice Fowler who had overtaken them. Later the young couple were married. The book tells of the hardships and joys of their early years together.

EISELEY, LOREN

The Immense Journey

1957. Random House.

In discussing the immense journey of life Loren Eiseley touches on a variety of subjects and asks a number of questions. He begins with fossils. In the 1860s Sir Charles Thomson, one of the first explorers of the North Atlantic seabed, found a little red cake which turned out to be a living fossil, the ancestor of modern sea urchins. Some ancient forms of life obviously had migrated from the continental shelf to the depths of the ocean. Eiseley asks whether life on our planet originated in its oceans or came from outer space. Creatures are still emerging from the ocean as the ancestors of humankind and other mammals may have done eons ago. In the mangrove swamps of the Niger there are fish that climb trees and in Australia a friend of Eiseley's tells of fish falling out of bushes and into his boat. The author also discourses on how flowers changed the world. When an explosion of flowering plants occurred, a simultaneous development of animal life came about. Eventually humans also appeared. Eiseley also tells of the discovery of oxygen-18, the presence of which indicates greater age than carbon-14 and provides a method of dating that indicates human beings must have developed very rapidly. For our species to survive and advance, four things had to happen: the human brain had to almost treble in size; this had to happen rapidly after birth; the period of childhood had to lengthen; and family bonds had to survive seasonal mating and become permanent—changes that called for many minor biological adjustments. The remains of a group of people who had a greater cranial capacity than any people of Europe, ancient or modern, have been found in South Africa. The author wonders whether or not these people were physically ill-equipped to compete against more ferocious, less intelligent humans. For years man has asked if there are populated worlds in space. Eiseley feels there may be intelligent life in space but says it will not resemble man. Every fall the author searches for the source of life but he doubts that it will ever be found.

Eiseley, a scientist, philosopher, and poet, combines the qualities of these professions in his writing. He becomes rhapsodical at times as he enthuses over some form in nature. He looks beyond facts to inherent beauty. At times his discussion becomes so profound the reader has to stop and ponder his meaning. His books cannot be fully appreciated if read rapidly; his is writing that needs to be savored.

A book talk is probably not the best way to present this book to potential readers. One must know a young person's interests and recommend it to those individuals able to appreciate the fine writing and the thoughts behind it.

In *The Invisible Pyramid* Eiseley comments on the progress humanity has made during the more than two million years of its existence and points out that humans, in endless pursuit of the future, have been destroying the present. To survive, they must give more attention to the world from which they have been trying to escape. Young people who want to explore human origins in greater depth can be introduced to the very readable *People of the Lake* by Richard Leakey and Roger Lewin, who attempt to describe the anatomy and the social behavior of some ancient hominids, drawing their conclusions from fossil evidence discovered in recent years and refuting the conclusions of other scientists as inaccurate. Anyone seriously interested in the subject will be eager to tackle the enlightening and attractive book *Origins* by the same authors. Leakey believes there may have been three or more species of early hominids and attempts to explain why one of these survived evolving into the species of the present. Not only do the authors try to explain the origins of the human race, they also speculate on its future. The person who enjoys Eiseley's writing should be introduced to his autobiography, *All the Strange Hours*, in which he recalls events the reader too will long remember. Eiseley not only had a difficult childhood and adolescence, his education was interrupted by the Depression, a period during which he rode the rails from coast to coast. But when he remembered his father's statement that he was a genius, he knew he had to go to college and make a name for himself.

ELLISON, RALPH

Invisible Man

1952. Random House.

As the young southern black's grandfather, a former slave, was dying he told his family to say "yes" always to the white man, "agree him to death and destruction." Although not sure just what the old man meant, the narrator thought of his grandfather occasionally when things were going well and knew he was following that advice in spite of himself. When he graduated from high school, he delivered the commencement oration and, because of the humility it expressed, he was highly praised and invited to repeat it at a smoker held by the men who represented the town's leading white citizens. However, before repeating the oration, he was required to take part in a dreadful fight along with nine other black youths, a "battle royal," that was degrading to both races, participants and onlookers. Afterward he was presented with a fine leather briefcase and a scholarship to the state college for Negroes, a beautiful school sponsored by wealthy northern white men who descended on the campus on Founders' Day each spring to be treated royally for their generosity. When the narrator was a junior, Dr. Bledsoe, president of the college, assigned him to drive a Mr. Norton on a sightseeing

trip in the area. What Mr. Norton saw and experienced caused Dr. Bledsoe to expel the young driver from the college. However, Bledsoe gave the young man letters to seven of the school's patrons in New York City, who would help the young man find a job for the summer, and in the fall he could return to finish his last year in college. The young man stayed at Men's House in Harlem waiting for a job, but there was no help forthcoming from the men to whom the first six letters were addressed. When the young man was in the office of the seventh patron, the patron's son, who worked there, let him see Bledsoe's letter which stated that the bearer would never be allowed to return to the college. This patron's son also told the narrator about a factory that needed workers. Unable to find anything else, the narrator applied there and was employed. One day in early winter he saw an old couple being evicted from their apartment and appealed to the other bystanders on the street, stimulating them to action. They attacked the marshal and carried all the furniture of the old people back into the apartment. Before the young man left the area, a redheaded white man named Jack approached him and offered him a job working for the Brotherhood. After spending four months with Brother Hambro in intense study and indoctrination, the narrator became the Brotherhood's chief spokesman for the Harlem District. So successful was he in his work that the committee which seemed to run the Brotherhood transferred him to another part of the city to lecture on the Woman Question. Starting at that time there was criticism of him from both blacks and whites; but he did not know the reason for the Brotherhood's change in attitude toward him. In the end he decided that not only was the Brotherhood devoid of goals worth working for, it had been using him for its own ends. Although he was unscathed physically during a terrible riot in Harlem, mentally he was greatly distressed, angered, and disillusioned. Once he realized that to white people he was invisible, he withdrew to his underground hideaway to try to "think things out in peaceful solitude." Eventually he decided to come out again "since there is a possibility that even an invisible man has a socially responsible role to play."

This is a dramatic, vital story of a complex and gifted young man who is trying hard to improve the lot of his people against great odds. Young people deeply interested in social issues will read this engrossing novel and appreciate its message.

The visit in New York City to the seventh patron of the college where he talks with the younger Mr. Emerson and learns why no one has helped him find work might be used in a book talk, pages 136–46.

Another book about a young black man is *Five Smooth Stones* by Ann Fairbairn. Although David Champlin had been graduated from a southern high school, he was able to attend a white Northern college because his patron recommended him so highly, going from

there to Harvard Law School and Oxford University. Then he went to work for a well-known black lawyer and eventually married his college sweetheart, who was white. He returned to the South and became active in the civil rights movement, a decision that led to his tragic, untimely death. As a little girl, Maya Angelou had lived with her Southern grandmother. Later, when she went to live with her mother in California, her life changed. In *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings*, she tells of a frightening experience with her father in Mexico, of living for several weeks in a car in a junkyard, of worrying that she was a lesbian because her body had developed so little at fifteen, and of having an illegitimate child when she was sixteen.

FAULKNER, WILLIAM

Intruder in the Dust

1948. Random House.

Chick was twelve when he slipped off a log crossing the creek one early winter day while hunting rabbits with two young black companions. When he climbed out, Lucas Beauchamp, who was standing on the bank, ordered all three boys to come along home with him. At the cabin, Chick was warmed and fed while his clothing and boots were dried. When the boys were about to leave, Chick dug all the money he had, seventy cents, out of his pocket and offered it to Lucas, who refused to accept it. The boy was angry and humiliated because he felt he owed Lucas something. Although at Christmastime Chick sent out four two-for-a-quarter cigars for Lucas and a tumbler of snuff for his wife, he still felt beholden. He began to save his money and in May sent a new dress to Lucas's wife. In September he received a gallon of homemade sorghum molasses from Lucas. In no way could Chick get even with the man, a fact he resented because Lucas was part black and in Mississippi a black was inferior. When Chick was sixteen, Lucas was arrested for killing a white man. The boy, who had been standing near the jail when the Negro was brought in, was asked to tell his uncle, a lawyer, that Lucas wanted to see him. The slain man belonged to a rural clan that often violated the law and people expected some of his kin would lynch Lucas. Chick accompanied his uncle, Gavin Stevens, to the jail that evening. Though Lucas refused to talk much, he did mention that Vinson Gowrie, the dead man, had been in the lumber business with someone who had been stealing from him. Stevens, presuming that Lucas knew what had really happened, told the old man he thought he could save him from hanging. Lucas asked for some tobacco which Stevens promised to bring the next day, but Chick bought some and took it to him that night. It was then that Lucas asked the boy to go out to Gowrie's grave, dig up the body, and look at it. Lucas then proceeded to explain to the dismayed boy that the bullet in the body did not match his gun. Chick went home to find his uncle

in his office talking with an old lady, Miss Habersham. When Stevens would not go to the grave, Chick persuaded his black friend Aleck Sander to go with him on horseback. As they started out, Miss Habersham stopped them with an offer to help. She had an old pickup which would be easier to use in carrying the body. The boys dug up the coffin only to find that the body inside was not Gowrie's. They filled in the grave and went back to town to see Stevens. Together they called on the sheriff. Another visit to the grave, this time in daylight, was interrupted by members of the dead man's family. When the coffin was opened again, it was empty. Between them those at the grave site reasoned out where the bodies were and recovered them. They also figured out who the murderer was, and Lucas was allowed to go free.

Faulkner's extremely long, involved sentences require effort, but mature readers who persevere will be well rewarded. In this novel they will encounter well-drawn characters, humor, and a picture of the state of race relations in the South during the 1940s—if they are mature enough to understand Chick's feelings about Lucas, Lucas's feelings about white people, and the explanation Stevens gives about the attitudes of whites toward blacks.

The librarian or other adult may prefer to recommend this book to individuals. However, Chick's accident and his visit to Lucas's home could be used for a book talk, pages 5–16, 20–27.

In *A Cry of Angels* Jeff Fields gives an account of the tension growing in the Ape Yard, the black section of Quarrytown, Georgia, using vividly drawn characters: a white boy, Earl, age fourteen, who lives with his great-aunt Esther, owner of a boardinghouse for old people; black Tio, Earl's peer and friend; Doc Bobo, a black entrepreneur who cheats his own people whenever he can, abusing them if they do not do as he says; Jayell, a young white architect, who grew up in the Ape Yard and is building sound, inexpensive, small homes to fit the terrain, thereby incurring Doc Bobo's wrath; and a huge Indian handyman who helps Earl with one of his problems. In *Halfway Home* by Julia Coley Duncan a very close relationship exists between a black family and the father and twelve-year-old daughter of a white family. The locale is a village in the Old South and the events are typical of precivil-rights days. The story is of greater interest to girls than boys.

FÉNELON, FANIA

Playing for Time

1977. Atheneum.

The author, a young French nightclub singer who is half-Jewish, had been arrested and imprisoned for nine months in Paris before she was deported to Germany. What probably saved her from the gas chamber and crematorium was her musical training—she could play the piano, sing, and orchestrate. It so happened that the two Ger-

mans, a woman and a man, in charge of Birkenau liked music and decided to make their camp different by assembling an orchestra of women musicians. The orchestra's conductor, a concert violinist, was Gustav Mahler's niece. Because the women gave concerts, they were better dressed and had better living accommodations than the other prisoners, although they were not better fed. The author was a favorite of many people not only for her warm personality and good humor, but also because she could do almost anything asked of her. Fénelon recalls events and people in Birkenau and continually marvels at how many of its inmates were able to survive the bestial treatment and degradation inflicted on them by other human beings. She analyzes the type of personality attracted to Nazism and points out the idiosyncrasies of such people. She mentions a few fellow prisoners she greatly admired, among them one who had been driven to the depths of brutishness by the depravities of the Nazis. She does not pull her punches when describing a homosexual orgy at which several orchestra members had to play to obtain some pails of sauerkraut—a great delicacy they had not been given heretofore in camp and greatly craved to supplement their rations. After the Allies landed in France, the Nazis decided the orchestra's space was needed to house persons scheduled for extermination. For that reason the author was sent to Bergen-Belsen and there almost died of typhus. She remembers several people begging her not to give up and die because the Allies were not far away. Finally, on April 15, 1945, the British soldiers stumbled on the camp at 11 A.M., and Fania roused enough to sing the "Marseillaise" and then "God Save the King." Her cousin in London heard her sing and knew for the first time in years that she was still alive. The Germans had given the order to shoot everyone and burn the camp at 3 P.M.

Numerous incidents are suitable for book talks. Kramer, the camp commandant, comes into the music room after a selection (picking the next people to be exterminated) to listen to the orchestra play and to relieve his tension, pages 90–95; Marta learns how to scrub a floor, pages 135–39; Mengele, a new doctor, arrives, pages 155–62; Mala, the young interpreter whom all the prisoners idolized, meets her fate, pages 162–68.

Elieser Wiesel was fourteen years old when the Jews of Sighet, Transylvania, were herded into a ghetto for a short time before being sent in cattle cars to Auschwitz and Birkenau. His mother and sisters were evidently eliminated immediately, but he and his father managed to stay together until just before the camp was liberated. He tells about the horrors of life in a labor camp in *Night*. Martin Gilbert in *Final Journey* has collected information about the deportation of Jews from each European country to death camps scattered across Germany and Poland. He quotes from stories told by survivors and non-Jewish witnesses, as well as official reports written by Germans. He has included photographs taken from many sources and nu-

merous maps showing the routes the death trains took. Also suggest *Fragments of Isabella* in which Isabella Leitner describes some scenes from her experiences at Auschwitz. Although she uses few words, these are so carefully chosen that she conveys to the reader her deepest feelings. Filip Müller was twenty when he was deported from Czechoslovakia to Auschwitz. There he worked on one of the crews which operated the crematoria, witnessing the gassing and cremation of untold numbers of people. He survived and describes the horrors he saw in *Eyewitness Auschwitz. Block 26: Sabotage at Buchenwald* by Pierre Julitte is a different kind of concentration-camp story in that the deportees were not Jewish, although they too suffered cruelly from hunger and inhuman living and working conditions. This revolves around a group of Frenchmen who sought some way to sabotage the German war effort and found it in the factory in which some of them assembled vertical and horizontal gyroscopes and wireless sets. Eventually they learned that these appliances were designed to equip a self-propelled projectile, the V-2 rocket, with which Hitler was sure he could bring the world to its knees.

FINNEY, JACK

Time and Again

1970. Simon & Schuster.

Si Morley was working as an artist for an advertising agency when he was approached by a stranger who asked him to accept a job about which Si knew nothing. Bored with his present work and wanting to investigate the offer, Si reported to what looked like a moving and storage business warehouse to be tested, questioned, and hypnotized. A tour of the facility revealed scenes from various times and places, and Si learned that this was a government project in which the staff was trying to learn if it were possible for a person in today's world to step back in time. If such a transition could be made, it was essential that there be nothing done which would influence or change any event that had occurred. Si was intrigued and suggested that he be allowed to go back to January 23, 1882, to see who had mailed a letter from New York to his girl's foster grandfather. The city of New York and its residents of that date were carefully researched by members of the project's staff and by Si and Kate. Every detail of Si's clothing and appearance had to be perfect; it was also important that he be well versed in the news of the day. Preparations were well conceived and carefully executed. Si's first visit was very brief. He took a walk in Central Park during a snowstorm and on his return stepped out on the balcony of his apartment. The transition to 1882 was so uneventful that he was not even sure he had made it. Kate accompanied him on the second visit, which lasted several hours. They saw the letter mailed and learned the sender's

address. On Si's third visit he spent two days, living at the boarding-house where the letter writer, Jake Pickering, lived. Si liked Julia, the landlady's niece, and learned that she was considering becoming Pickering's wife. The next day he eavesdropped on the meeting between the foster grandfather and Jake, suggested in the letter. Then he returned to the present. When he reported to his superiors, the project's director, Dr. Danziger, resigned because the Board did not agree with him that another visit by Si was too great a risk. Si returned to 19 Gramercy Park of 1882, knowing he must warn Julia about marrying Jake who had revealed himself as a blackmailer. When Si found a way to eavesdrop on the second meeting between Jake and his victim, Julia was with him, the two of them very nearly losing their lives in the nightmare of fire and destruction resulting from that meeting. Si, realizing that he and Julia were in love, knew that she could not move with him into the twentieth century permanently and had to decide whether he could stay with her in the nineteenth.

Good readers have been intrigued by this convincing science fiction story with its believable characters and carefully developed plot. The descriptions of New York in 1882 are fascinating for anyone who lives there, has been there, or who has read much about the city.

For a book talk tell of Rube Prien's approach to Si and a little about the tests at headquarters and the scenes he saw there, pages 7–17, 22–49.

Dick Young drank a hallucinogenic drug and traveled back in time six hundred years, becoming so engrossed in the period that he returned again and again even though the drug could permanently damage his brain cells in *The House on the Strand* by Daphne DuMaurier. *The Time Machine* by H. G. Wells is another tale of travel through time in which the Time Traveler goes ahead in time to the year 802701 to find the area bordering on the Thames where he lived completely changed and peopled by creatures somewhat resembling humans. His contact with frightening underground dwellers almost incapacitated him for his journey home. He encountered huge insects, fearsome crustaceans, and other strange animals during the time periods he passed through on his way back to the present. In *Time Storm* by Gordon Dickson, after lines of time change have ravaged the earth and caused all but a few people to vanish, Marc Despard travels both backward and forward in time seeking a haven for the small band of people that has gathered about him and some way to control the time lines. Another book on time travel to suggest is Clifford Simak's *Mastodonia.* When Asa Steele discovered it was possible to travel backward in time, Rila Elliot, the woman he loved, showed him how he could capitalize on this knowledge by marketing safaris back to prehistoric times. Mastodonia was the name they gave to the area in which the time roads began and where Asa and Rila decided to settle permanently.

FITZGERALD, F. SCOTT

The Great Gatsby

1925. Scribner.

After Nick Carraway graduated from Yale, he went into the bond business in New York City and managed to get a house within commuting distance on West Egg. The house next to his, a mansion with extensive grounds, was owned by a wealthy man, Jay Gatsby, a giver of fabulous parties. Nick's cousin Daisy and her husband, Tom Buchanan, lived on East Egg. One day Gatsby sent Nick an invitation to a party and out of curiosity he went. Many of Gatsby's guests did not know their host, yet they partook of the lavish supper and the plentiful drinks and freely used his pool and the beach, house, and gardens. Once when Nick went to New York with Tom, he learned that the man had a mistress, Myrtle Wilson, the wife of a local garage man. Shortly after this Gatsby suggested that Nick ask Daisy over for tea so that he might drop in and meet her. Nick then discovered that Daisy and Gatsby, who was poor at the time, had been in love before she met Tom. After tea Gatsby took them on a tour of his house and Daisy was very impressed. Later Gatsby told Nick that Daisy visited him afternoons quite often. He also confessed some of the facts of his life and admitted that he still dreamed of winning Daisy. On the hottest day of the summer, Gatsby and Nick were among those invited to the Buchanans for lunch. After lunch the women suggested that they all go into the city. Tom, obviously upset because he could see that Daisy was infatuated with Gatsby, suggested that he drive Gatsby's big yellow car and Gatsby drive his coupe. Daisy then decided to ride with Gatsby. Tom stopped for gasoline at Wilson's service station where Wilson told him that he and his wife were going West in a few days, upsetting Tom further. While the group was having drinks in the city, Gatsby told Tom that Daisy loved him, Gatsby; then she confessed that although she had loved Tom, she was now leaving him. Tom admitted he had been investigating Gatsby's past and business ventures and Gatsby tried to deny Tom's accusations. When they returned home, the two groups traded cars, Daisy driving Gatsby's. As they passed Wilson's, Myrtle, thinking Tom was in the yellow car, ran out into the street. Daisy, who struck and killed her, kept going. The next day Wilson set out to find Myrtle's killer, thinking at first it had been Tom. Upon learning the car was Gatsby's, Wilson sought him out, shot him, and then killed himself. Nick was the only one who knew the whole story. He felt sorry for Gatsby who had tried so hard to make his fantasies come true. Of all the guests Gatsby had entertained, only Nick and one other man came to his funeral.

At the end Nick becomes somewhat philosophical. He talks about the dreams a man dreams and tries so hard to make come true, all too often unsuccessfully. This novel presents a good picture of the life led by the idle rich in the 1920s.

The book does not lend itself well to a book talk. The librarian might, however, want to try to describe one of Gatsby's parties and the preparation for it to be found in chapter 3.

Although *Only Yesterday* by Frederick Lewis Allen is classified as history, it is a witty, very readable chronicle of the United States during the 1920s to suggest to young people for a rounded picture of the era. With photographs and text Marvin Barrett in *The Jazz Age* describes the 1920s as "the decade of bad taste." *This Side of Paradise*, Fitzgerald's first novel, is a good picture of college life leading to the jazz age. The main character is Amory Blaine whose school years might have been outstanding except for his escapades and extracurricular activities. He was equally unsuccessful in love. In the end, although he seemed to have adopted a new outlook on life, he remains at loose ends, just as Fitzgerald himself was. Any girl interested in getting the most out of college, in becoming a writer, or in pacing her social life during her college years will enjoy Fitzgerald's *Letters to His Daughter*. In it he comments briefly on many of the authors whose works are included in this edition of *Doors to More Mature Reading* and recalls incidents from his years at Princeton. Those who also read *This Side of Paradise* will recognize its autobiographical scenes.

FULLER, JOHN G.

We Almost Lost Detroit

1975. Reader's Digest Press.

The Fermi breeder reactor power plant, sponsored by Detroit Edison, Dow Chemical, and twelve other utilities, was a unique cooperative venture launched near Detroit in 1952. In order to safeguard the public should a nuclear accident occur, the president of the project, Walker L. Cisler, gathered experts who were confident they could solve every safety problem. In spite of this, no insurance company would take the gamble of insuring the nuclear plant. The Advisory Committee on Reactor Safeguards, a division of the Atomic Energy Commission (AEC), after careful study decided that the planned reactor would be a threat to public safety and construction should be postponed. Because the AEC was eager to see the development of commercial atomic power, the chairman, Lewis Strauss, marked the report confidential and gave the Fermi plant permission to go ahead with its plans. Walter Reuther, president of the United Auto Workers, brought suit against the Fermi plant on the grounds that the reactor was a public hazard; nevertheless construction went forward. The WASH-740 study and the Gomberg Report, which defined the amount of damage possible in the event of a major nuclear accident, were released. The news media paid little attention to these shocking figures. Although Congress passed the Price-Anderson Act, which insured nuclear plants up to $500 mil-

lion, this amount could not begin to cover the costs of a major disaster. When the United States Court of Appeals ruled against the building of the Fermi plant, Cisler and the AEC, backed by the Justice Department, appealed to the Supreme Court. This body's decision was seven to two for approval of the plant. When the reactor was installed, there was an accident with the sodium used as a coolant. Because the nuclear fuel had not been inserted into the reactor, the incident was minor. After the uranium was loaded, the plant operated at a very low level because of various faults in the system. In 1966 the plant suffered a meltdown. It took three years to find out what had gone wrong, to figure out how to correct it, and to make the plant operable again. Fortunately the accident was so carefully handled it did not endanger the community, but it could have been extremely serious. The total costs of the plant to this point had been $132 million; thus the cost of producing power by nuclear reactor was fifteen times more than that produced by coal. Finally the AEC refused to renew the license for Fermi and this tremendous loss had to be written off, the plant partly dismantled, and the rest of it sealed off because it was highly radioactive.

This book has helped to inform the American people about the dangers of nuclear plants under present operating conditions and to the fact that the government has deliberately deceived them all along. It is clear, concise, and dramatic. Fuller not only has told the incredible story of the Fermi reactor but he also has included accounts of the nuclear accidents at Chalf River, Canada, in 1952; at Windscale in Great Britain in 1957, and at two reactors near Idaho Falls in 1955 and 1961. He lists the names of outstanding nuclear scientists who have opposed the too rapid growth of nuclear power plants and the foreword of his book was written by a member of the Union of Concerned Scientists.

The destruction of the reactor known as SL-1 near Idaho Falls might be described in a book talk, pages 104–15.

Anyone seriously interested in more information on the subject may want to read *Light Water: How the Nuclear Dreams Dissolved* by Irvin Bupp and Jean-Claude Derian, both with close professional association with the nuclear power programs in their respective countries, the United States and France. They examine the development of nuclear power and recognize the mistakes made by governments and reactor manufacturers. *The Curve of Binding Energy* by John McPhee is a biography of Theodore B. Taylor, a theoretical physicist and one of the most inventive nuclear scientists today. Believing it is possible for terrorists to make a nuclear bomb capable of killing thousands of people, he is concerned that safeguards for preventing terrorists from obtaining uranium or plutonium in one form or another are too lax in the United States. *Three Mile Island* by Mark Stephens is an hour-by-hour account of the breakdown of the nuclear power plant near the state capital of Pennsylvania in March 1979, that describes in detail the incompetence, deceit, political bun-

gling, professional rivalry, and faulty and inadequate equipment which led to and was demonstrated by this terrifying accident. To anyone wanting a novel about a nuclear disaster the librarian might suggest *The Prometheus Crisis* by Thomas Scortia and Frank E. Robinson. In it the world's largest nuclear plant, rushed into production despite technical problems and defective parts, suffers a catastrophic accident that brings disaster to the whole Los Angeles area.

FYODOROVA, VICTORIA, AND FRANKEL, HASKEL

The Admiral's Daughter

1979. Delacorte.

When Captain Jackson Tate was the United States naval representative on a special military mission to Moscow during World War II, he met Zoya Fyodorova, one of the Soviet Union's most beloved film stars, at a party given by Molotov. They could speak only a few words of each other's languages, but they obviously liked one another. Zoya would not risk having him take her home from the party but the next day she agreed to have dinner with him. He wore civilian clothing so that he blended inconspicuously among the Russians. Before long they discovered they were in love. Zoya's sister Alexandra did not approve of the friendship because it was dangerous but her other sister Maria sometimes accompanied them so that it would seem less evident that Jack was escorting Zoya. One night when it was stormy, he stayed all night in Zoya's apartment; they also celebrated V-E day by sleeping together. Jack asked her to marry him and she accepted, although they did not know whether or not they would be allowed to marry. Suddenly, while Zoya was away on a tour to entertain hospitalized soldiers, Jack was given forty-eight hours to leave Russia. Returning to Moscow, Zoya, who did not see her lover in Russia again, knew she was pregnant. She had promised Jack that if this occurred, she would name the baby Victor or Victoria, depending upon its sex. When the baby, a girl, was about eleven months old, the NKVD (secret police) took Zoya away to prison, accused her of being a spy, and tried to make her confess to many crimes. It was her sister Alexandra who undertook the care of little Victoria during Zoya's eight years of internment in one labor camp after another. Suffering a great many hardships, Zoya aged rapidly. Meanwhile Victoria grew up calling Alexandra "Mama." After Stalin died, many prisoners were freed, Zoya among them. When she went back into films, this time starring as an older woman, she was able to have Victoria with her, identifying herself as the girl's real mother. Victoria also studied acting and made a name for herself in films. Eventually learning who her father was, her one desire was to see him. With the help of Irina Kirk, an American citizen of Russian descent, contacts were first made with Jackson Tate who was by that time in his seventies and married. Victoria

tried to get a visa to visit her father, but the government kept putting her off. When it appeared that Zoya and Victoria might both be sent to prison, Victoria alerted the two journalists whom Irina had lined up. Once Victoria's story made the front pages around the world, Russia had to give in because of the publicity, and Victoria got her chance to visit her father.

A love story that commands the reader's interest from beginning to end, it also gives a good picture of life in Russia today.

Zoya's first meeting with Tate could be worked into a book talk, pages 40–46. When Zoya invited Jack to dinner is another amusing incident, pages 56–60.

Another true father-and-daughter account is *Twenty Letters to a Friend* by Svetlana Alliluyeva, Joseph Stalin's daughter. Her story, which also includes a great deal about her mother, brother, and other relatives, reveals yet another view of life in Communist Russia. Before Stalin became the central figure in the Soviet government, he had been a loving family man, but as he became more powerful, he hardened and even members of his wife's family were arrested and imprisoned. The daughter eventually defected to the United States.

GALSWORTHY, JOHN

The Forsyte Saga

1922. Scribner.

The Forsyte Saga includes three novels about the Forsyte family: *The Man of Property, In Chancery,* and *To Let.* The reader is first introduced to the Forsytes at old Jolyon's home in the late 1880s as the family was celebrating the engagement of Miss June, old Jolyon's granddaughter, to the architect, Philip Bosinney. Present were three generations of Forsytes casting sidewise glances at the stranger about to become a member of the family. In this first volume too are presented to the reader the "man of property" himself, Soames Forsyte, and his lovely wife, Irene, whose feelings toward this self-important man were diminishing. In an effort to please her, Soames decided to build a country place, and hired young Bosinney as its architect. The two men quarreled several times over the plans and cost of the house, but Soames finally gave in and spent the additional money Bosinney required. The young architect, like most men, was attracted to Irene who, in turn, had fallen in love with him. She refused to move into the new house and asked Soames to release her. He declined to do so, and she left him, only to come back a few days later, Bosinney having been killed in an accident. It is at this point that the first volume ends. In the second, Irene left Soames again. Taking her maiden name, she settled into an apartment and gave music lessons to support herself. Becoming friendly with old Jolyon after he bought Soames's new home, Irene made his last days happy

with her gentleness and charm. Soames, the leading character in this second volume, continued to watch his fortune grow. His desire to have a family frustrated, he decided to marry a French girl, Annette; and Irene became the wife of young Jolyon, now a widower. The last volume opens in the year 1920 to a world in which time and war had brought many changes. The union of Soames and Annette produced a daughter named Fleur; that of Jolyon and Irene a son, Jon. When the children had grown up, they met accidentally and fell in love, unaware of the previous relationship between Irene and Soames. Eventually young Jon, learning the details of his mother's earlier marriage, gave up Fleur and left England for America, where he was joined by his mother. Fleur, thwarted in her love for Jon, married someone else. One by one the old Forsytes died, and after the death of Timothy, the last of them, Soames, now lonely and aging himself, realized that the Forsyte Age was finished.

In presenting the vast canvas of the Forsyte family with the characters of three generations so well delineated, Galsworthy has given readers a feeling of being part of this great English upper-middle-class family, able to understand the shades of relationship therein. The first book of the trilogy, the one which originally bore the Forsyte title, is the best and most enthralling. An exposition of English manners and mores from Victorian times to the first twenty years of the twentieth century, the *Saga* appeals to mature young people who like social history.

While there are a number of interesting accounts of family gatherings to use as book talks, the best way to introduce this classic is by describing the central members of the family tree.

Another author who has written a several generation family story in numerous volumes is Mazo de La Roche. The first volume, *The Building of Jalna,* concerns Adeline Court, the beautiful daughter of a noble Irish family, who married Philip Whiteoak, an English officer in the Hussars stationed in India. After inheriting a house in Montreal, Philip sold his commission and most of their possessions to make the move to the new world. Eventually the Whiteoaks settled in Ontario where they built the new house, named Jalna. For other family stories see *Windswept** by Mary Ellen Chase.

GANN, ERNEST

Fate Is the Hunter

1961. Simon & Schuster

The night was sinister. Both pilots were uneasy and troubled, but neither knew why. There was overcast above and below, yet the weather was fine. They were flying a new plane carrying a light passenger load. As they neared New York, the tower gave them a good weather report and clearance to land. While the pilot was figuring their arrival time in New York on the slide rule, he noticed

they were flying fifty feet too high—sloppy flying—and easily adjusted the throttles and stabilizer wheel to bring the plane to exactly 5,000 feet. Suddenly he decided that his seat was somewhat too far back and bent down to ease it forward a notch. As he straightened up, the copilot gave a horrified gasp which drew the pilot's attention to the windshield. The sight of a green wing-tip light and two flickering tongues of engine-exhaust flame just ahead froze his hands to the control wheel. It was too late for any reaction. The plane passed so close, they felt they could reach out and touch it. Then suddenly it was gone, and they were safe. The pilot radioed the tower in New York and got the report that there was no traffic. From where had the outlaw come? What had made the pilot bring the plane down fifty feet at just the right moment so that with such a small margin he had avoided a collision? The author and pilot, Ernest Gann, asked similar questions many times during his flying career. He believes that pilots are engaged in an unending war with fate, and because they take up their profession knowing this full well, the story of their experiences is an inspiring one. Gann began his career as a barnstorming pilot, went through the rigorous training for commercial airline pilots, flew passenger and cargo planes, and took part in World War II and the Korean War. After experiencing many narrow escapes while friends perished in similar circumstances, he decided to quit flying before his luck ran out. He speaks with real affection and admiration for the veteran pilots who trained him. One of his instructors, Captain Ross, considered Gann a professional challenge, and eventually the younger man could set a plane down on a dime and handle it in flight under any condition. Whether he describes being caught in an ice storm; flying blind to land a burning, disabled plane in Newfoundland; flying over unexplored territory in the Andes without oxygen; or fighting to keep an ailing plane in the air on a flight between California and Honolulu, he keeps the story taut with suspense.

The vivid, dramatic presentation of these very personal reminiscences draws readers into the cockpit and allows them to share vicariously the author's feelings and action, the secrets as well as the beauties of flight. Occasional crudities are part of the tension of the moment, and any mature reader who appreciates a well-told story will respond to this book favorably.

Book talk possibilities include Gann's first attempts at landing, chapter 2, and the search for and eventual rescue of the sick and injured men in a plane down somewhere in eastern Canada, chapters 11 and 12. Chapter 10 contains the story of a flight from Greenland to Iceland, when visibility was only forty feet and there was no radio contact to bring the plane to the field. The first incident in the descriptive note also has been used in a book talk.

An early pilot who experienced many narrow escapes and crashes was Antoine de Saint Exupéry. That he reveled in the beauty he saw

and the rapture he felt when he was flying is evident in his writing. Because modern guidance systems did not exist during his flying days, he often had to rely on landmarks, which made it easy to get lost. Sensitive young people who appreciate poetic writing will enjoy his books *Wind, Sand and Stars* and *Night Flight*. Another pilot who finds joy in the air is Richard Bach, author of *Stranger to the Ground*. On a solo flight from Wethersfield, England, to Chaumont, France, he reminisces about some previous flying experiences in the Air Force and in flight training. The weather report predicts rainstorms, and his radio refuses to operate when he is halfway home. Suddenly he is in the midst of a severe storm and his plane ices up, loses power, and sinks. He is sure this is his last flight, but the lower air is warm, the ice sloughs off in large sheets, and he reaches base safely. Bach also wrote *Biplane*. In North Carolina he bought an old wood and fabric plane such as barnstormers used in the 1920s and flew it out to his home in California—a very different experience from those he had flying his Sabrejet in the Air Force. Librarians should certainly suggest *The Spirit of St. Louis* in which the pioneering aviator, Charles Lindbergh, describes his preparation for the first solo transatlantic flight and his landing at LeBourget Aerodrome in Paris in May 1927. This well-written biography includes Lindbergh's experiences flying the night mail, his barnstorming days, and some reminiscences of his childhood and youth.

GARDNER, JOHN C.

Grendel

1971. Knopf.

The monster Grendel lived in a cave under water. To come ashore to dry land, he had to swim through the fire snakes guarding his abode. Usually he came out only at night, relying on the cover of darkness for safety. However, because he was curious about the Danes and fascinated by their activities, he took to coming out in the daytime and carefully hiding to observe them going about their domestic activities, preparing for war, engaging in battle, and celebrating victories. At night he listened outside the meadhall of King Hrothgar who was gradually gaining strength and wealth by conquering neighboring peoples. The harper who sang of the brave deeds of warriors in the past intrigued Grendel. Though he did not believe the deeds were true, they had such a fine sound to them he wished them to be true and grieved because they were not. The truth of the matter was that Grendel was lonely and unrealistic. He had no friends and wished for someone to talk with. Yet whenever he tried talking to people, they were unable to understand him and were repelled by his hideousness. Seeking advice from a dragon proved fruitless. Although the dragon welcomed him, he was unsympathetic and even made fun of Grendel. When he advised Grendel to emulate dragons

by finding a hoard of gold to guard instead, Grendel became angry, for he did not understand what the dragon was saying. The dragon, however, did do Grendel a service by putting a charm on him so that no weapon could injure him. Grendel began to visit the meadhall regularly, eating the Danes he killed and drinking their blood. The Danes called him the "terrible world-rim-walker." One day a ship landed near the Danes' village. The men aboard were so powerfully built that Grendel looked at them with awe. Not knowing whether he was afraid of them, the monster wondered whether to postpone his raids until the visitors had left, but was too curious about them to do so. The newcomers, who said they had heard the Danes had an enemy that entered the meadhall regularly, killing some of them, believed they could overcome this monster. The Danes neither welcomed the visitors wholeheartedly nor did they appreciate hearing the strangers boasting of their prowess. When everyone had gone to bed, Grendel entered the meadhall and quickly killed and ate several men. When the monster approached the bed on which the leader of the visitors lay feigning sleep, his hand was seized by the man. The man, who was immensely strong, twisted Grendel's arm behind his back and proceeded to rip the arm from the monster's body. Though Grendel did escape, he knew that he would die.

This is a retelling of the story of Beowulf from the monster's point of view. In spite of Grendel's bloodthirstiness, Gardner depicts him as having a good sense of humor. The reader's sympathy is with the monster because he is lonely and envious, hanging around people, just out of sight but watching them carefully, wanting their acceptance. Gardner, a teacher of creative writing, formerly taught medieval literature and his knowledge of those times is evident in his careful detailing of the life of the Danish characters. Grendel is a very embittered character, looking at everything as worthless, even himself. The illustrations are simply a combination of short curved or straight lines, subtly suggesting faces, whether of Grendel or another character related to the contents of each chapter.

Grendel's visit to the dragon might be used for a book talk, pages 57–74.

Those who enjoyed Grendel's story will also like *The Truth about Dragons* by Hazard Adams. Firedrake, the dragon, guarding a treasure in the mountains of California, had a hard time withstanding the blanishments of an attractive girl who came to visit him with the intention of gaining possession of his hoard. In making a tape recording of Lilith's visits, Firedrake told much about the education, lore, and lives of dragons. In *The Last Unicorn* by Peter Beagle a lovely unicorn that lived in a lilac wood set out on a quest one day to find others of her kind. On her way she was befriended by a magician who had to turn her into a young girl to save her from the Red Bull (perhaps, a dragon?). Young people who like fantasy will delight in the manner in which she completes her mission.

GARFIELD, BRIAN

Wild Times

1978. Simon & Schuster.

Hugh Cardiff was almost thirteen when a Yankee sniper shot his father and left the boy an orphan in Kentucky. Before dying, Michael Cardiff shot and killed the sniper, for which act Hugh later was accused of murder. A neighbor offered the youth a means of escape—traveling to California with his nephew, Isaac Singman, and an itinerant peddler. The journey west was mostly uneventful until they stopped at Tyree Grant, a ranch in what is now Arizona. When the Tyrees heard Hugh's story, they insisted he stay with them as a member of their family. Isaac continued westward without him. Hugh already was an excellent marksman and taught Vern, the older Tyree boy, to shoot; Vern in turn taught Hugh to ride. Grandfather Tyree took a liking to Hugh, and taught the boy what he knew about Indians, tracking, and the finer points of shooting. When Hugh was in his late teens, Vern caught his sister Libby and Hugh in what appeared to be a compromising situation. This touched off a fight between the two young men in which both were wounded. Hugh was ordered off the ranch and told never to see Libby again. He drifted for a time, taking part in a number of shooting matches that established his reputation as a champion rifle shot. Eventually he went to New York to try to find Libby who had gone East to school. There he discovered that she had recently married the heir to an industrial fortune. When Hugh went to see her, he learned that the Tyrees had lost the ranch through no fault of their own and that Libby, knowing the family would be poor, had married in desperation. However, she was so unhappy that she agreed to go away with Hugh. Her husband, Phipps Merriam, was interested in politics and looked forward to being President some day, an ambition that made divorce impossible. He was powerful and determined enough to force Libby to return to him, and the child she bore by Hugh was raised as Merriam's son. When Vern tipped off the police to the fact that Hugh was still wanted for murder, Hugh was smuggled out of the country by friends. In a few years he went to Mexico and later married an Indian girl educated at a convent there. They had a son and were very happy. However, Hugh lost them both in a smallpox epidemic. After years of exile in Mexico, Hugh was pardoned by President Arthur and returned to the United States. His reputation as a marksman and as the hero of dime novels written by a friend continued to grow. In time he organized a spectacular, exceedingly popular Wild West show which traveled through the United States. A year before Merriam was to run for President, he was so badly injured in an accident on a big game hunt organized by Vern that he had to withdraw from the campaign. Later Libby was able to divorce him and she and Hugh were married.

This is a long, detailed, exciting novel of early days in the West. Hugh is larger than life with many impossible feats to his credit. While he says the many dime novels that were written about his exploits were mostly fiction, his own experiences are fully as unbelievable as the dime novels. However, he is a fabulous character, admirable for his honesty, clearheadedness, and courage—a legendary person in a class only a little beneath that of Paul Bunyan. There is enough historical fact to give the book authenticity, sufficient action to appeal to boys, and plenty of romance to appeal to girls.

Hugh's early life can be used as an introduction to the novel, pages 37–40. Book one includes one of Hugh's early shooting matches, an event requiring careful planning to turn it into an exciting, successful book talk, pages 9–36.

Readers of Vardis Fisher's *Mountain Man* will encounter Jim Bridger, Kit Carson, Jim Beckwourth, and Jed Smith—some of the real mountain men whose exploits influenced the history of the West—in this story about young, well-educated Samson John Minard, a mountain man of the author's imagination. Minard fell in love with the beautiful daughter of Tall Mountain, a Flathead chief, and bargained for her with her father. Their idyllic life together was brief because she and their unborn child were killed by Crow braves while Sam was on his trapline. Minard swore vengeance on the entire Crow nation. Another thread of the story concerns Kate Bowden who was driven out of her mind witnessing the massacre of her whole family by Indians and refused to leave their graves. She was provided for by Minard and other mountain men for many years, although she never seemed to know it. *Bendigo Shafter* by Louis L'Amour is the story of an almost too-good-to-be-true young man who helped found a settlement at South Pass in Wyoming, defended it, supplied meat for its inhabitants, and rescued or helped in other ways the pioneers who passed through on their way West. Also suggest *The Man Who Loved Cat Dancing* by Marilyn Durham. Jay Grobart who had tragically lost his wife, Cat Dancing, is unexpectedly saddled with ensuring the safety of Catherine Crocker, a white woman. Grobart and his men have just held up a train and are trying to evade the law officers. Catherine's presence complicates matters.

GEDGE, PAULINE

Child of the Morning

1977. Dial.

Disappointed in his son and namesake because he was lazy, self-indulgent, soft, and not overly bright, Thothmes I, Pharaoh of Egypt from 1540 BC to 1501 BC, decided to make his brilliant, beautiful daughter, Hatshepsut, his heir even though the law specified that the Pharaoh must be male. Because Hatshepsut was believed to be the incarnation of the god Amun-Ra, Thothmes I used this to justify

his decision. After she became the Crown Prince, she asked her father to apprentice Senmut, a lowly young priest who had befriended her earlier, to the great architect, Ineni. Senmut, intelligent and ambitious, worked hard to learn his new trade. At the training ground the girl learned to drive a chariot, to use a bow and a spear, to feint, and to anticipate an enemy's moves, as a ruler and leader of any army should be able to do. After the Queen died, Thothmes I, believing it was time to make his daughter regent and to give her some experience in government, took her on a tour of the realm. He also warned her that the priests would support her half-brother's claim to the throne after his father's death. Before Hatshepsut was crowned Regent, she began to gather around her those she could trust. She made Senmut a Steward of Amun, instructing him to seek out those priests who could not be trusted. Her father began to shift the kingdom's affairs of state to her, and only five years after her coronation he died. Senmut's encouragement and persuasion made it possible for her to face the future and the people without her father, for immediately her half-brother began to plot against her with a high priest who had been disloyal to Thothmes I. Senmut and Hapuseneb, another trusted official, advised Hatshepsut to accept Thothmes II as pharaoh, since he would probably allow her to go on ruling the country, being too lazy to do it himself. They were right. However, she had to marry Thothmes II because he wanted an heir. When Hatshepsut led the army to put down an uprising in Nubia and insisted on fighting side by side with her troops, she acquired another valuable friend, the black Nehesi, commander of the shock troops, who later became Guardian of the Royal Seal. Shortly after Thothmes II took another wife, both she and Hatshepsut became pregnant. Hatshepsut produced a fragile girl and Aset, a lusty boy. Thothmes II had been Pharaoh only a few years when he died of the plague. After the funeral Egypt expected Hatshepsut to ratify little Thothmes III's claim to the throne and declare herself Regent, but two years passed before she took any action. On the day that her own temple was dedicated, the statue of Amun that had been placed beside hers spoke, calling her "Beloved King of Egypt," and immediately she declared herself Pharaoh. The country continued to prosper but she knew that when the young heir grew up, he would claim the throne and he did. When he became King, he had Hatshepsut's three most trusted advisers killed and eventually she was poisoned.

This is a long, involved story, rich in descriptions of dress, customs, country, feasts, religious celebrations, and worship. The only love story is that of Hatshepsut and Senmut, but many years passed before they even acknowledged their love. They could never marry and they did not descend to the level of having an affair. However, in their last difficult years, they did find comfort together nightly.

Chapter 1 is very colorful and introduces to the reader a number of characters. A book talk could be built from it. In chapter 4 Hatshep-

sut frantically flees from her sister's deathbed, falls into the sacred lake near the temple of Amun, and is rescued by Senmut, then a lowly, unknown priest. This incident, the beginning of their friendship, could be used in a book talk.

Allen Drury also has written a novel with an Egyptian background entitled *A God against the Gods.* In it Akhenaten, the beautiful son of Amunhotep III, was stricken with a horribly disfiguring disease when he was about ten. Nefertiti, who had always loved him, became his wife; they were named co-regents when both were fifteen. However, the gods were not kind to the young couple and an endless barrage of disappointments finally affected the young Pharaoh mentally. His irrational actions shamed his family and terrified and alienated his subjects. Philipp Vandenberg has written what he calls an archaeological biography in *Nefertiti,* a well-illustrated, very readable small book. The author quotes from stelae, letters found in Amarna, Cairo papyri, and fragment finds of annals to substantiate his interpretation of Nefertiti's life.

GRAY, MARTIN

For Those I Loved

1971. Little, Brown.

At fourteen Martin Gray became the breadwinner for his mother and two small brothers because his father was a soldier from whom the family seldom heard. The Poles already had begun to discriminate against the Jews even before Poland had fallen at the outbreak of World War II and the Germans marched into Warsaw. When his father finally came home, he told Martin he must be alert and take the first opportunity to escape, should he ever be arrested, because seldom would there be a second chance. The Germans now began to seal off the streets in Warsaw where many of the Jews lived. However, the streetcars still ran through the area, although they did not stop. Having figured out where to get on and off the cars with a minimum of danger, Martin worked out a scheme whereby he could leave the ghetto, buy food, and bring it back, selling what the family did not need. He had some narrow escapes, and twice was betrayed to the Germans. His experience in prison was grim, but finally friends got him out. Eventually the Germans began to deport Jews to extermination camps by the trainload, 6,000 at a time at first, and he describes in detail how the Germans, Poles, and Jewish police rounded up victims. Ultimately, Martin's family too was betrayed and, seeing them lined up for deportation, he joined them, but was unable to help them escape. He became separated from them at Treblinka and knew he would never see them again. Martin quickly caught on to what he had to do to survive. One day with a few others he was sent to the lower camp where the death chambers and the mass graves were. Determined to escape and tell the world what he

had seen and experienced, he got away by means that tested his strength and tenacity to the utmost. He first joined the partisans and then the Russian army with which he went all the way to Berlin. When the war was over, he persuaded the Americans to allow him to go to his grandmother in New York City. While learning English, he supported himself at first by selling clothing from door to door. Always able to make the most of every opportunity and every new acquaintance, he advanced himself until he achieved success as an importer of antiques and amassed a fortune. A girl he knew introduced him to Dina, also a European, and it was love at first sight. At age thirty-five he was able to retire and marry Dina. They found a home in France, rebuilt it, and were ideally happy there. Their first child, a daughter, was born in 1960. Later they had another girl and two boys. In October 1970, the area they lived in had been almost without rain for many weeks. Everything was very dry when the mistral began to blow, and fires broke out everywhere. Dina took the children away in the car while Martin went to help a neighbor. He never saw his family alive again and still doesn't know exactly what happened, nor how they were burned to death. He had lost another family.

The book is dramatically written, describing all the horrors of the holocaust. The reader cannot help but marvel at Martin's ingenuity, perseverence, and daring. Constantly driven by the determination to live and avenge the deaths of his people, it seems impossible that one person could have endured so much and done so much.

One of Martin's dramatic escapes might be used in a book talk. He escaped from prison with the help of friends, pages 91–97, was picked up by two soldiers in the street from whom he escaped, pages 98–99, found a way out of the lower camp in Treblinka, pages 144–47, and got away from the upper camp, pages 151–57.

Another account of a Jewish family in Poland during World War II is told by one of the survivors, Luba Gurdus, in *The Death Train.* Luba's sister Mira looked like an Aryan and was able to find work and a place to live during most of the war. Mira provided her sister with shelter at times but Luba did have to spend some time in prison and at the Maydaneck concentration camp. Another story of a young person during World War II is *Mottele* by Gertrude Samuels. Mottele was only twelve when he joined the Jewish partisans in the forests near the Russian border. The Germans had killed his family and the boy valorously avenged himself again and again. *A Bag of Marbles* by Joseph Joffo describes the experiences of two young French Jewish boys in Nazi-occupied France during World War II. Also recommend *The House on Prague Street,* an autobiographical novel, in which Hana Demetz describes Helene Richter's childhood in Czechoslovakia. Her mother's parents were wealthy Jews, her father was German. During World War II she gradually lost every member of her mother's large family, both parents, and the young soldier she loved.

GREENBERG, JOANNE

I Never Promised You a Rose Garden

1964. Holt.

By the time Deborah Blau was sixteen she was living mostly in her imaginary world of Yri. In desperation her parents took her to doctors and a psychiatrist who recommended treatment in a small hospital for mental patients. At the hospital an internationally known psychiatrist, Dr. Fried, decided to take Deborah as her patient. In an interview with Mrs. Blau the psychiatrist determined how the trouble began, but knew she would have to delve more deeply into Deborah's mind to help her. The author describes some of the other patients and life in the hospital's wards. She also takes the reader into Deborah's mind for a view of Yri and its inhabitants, as well as to see how the girl retreated there when the real world closed in on her or became too complicated. Dr. Fried told Deborah there was hope for her recovery, but the course of treatment would not be easy. She helped the girl relate earlier experiences to what seemed to exist in her secret world, telling her in the process, "I cannot promise you a rose garden." Gradually Deborah came to understand herself and her reactions, although small events could still upset her and send her into such chaos that she required the cold-sheet treatment. However, she did make progress and was allowed to go home for five days, where she was uncomfortable still. After three years it seemed best that Deborah take a room in town and study for her high school equivalency test. She was old enough now to get a job and be on her own, provided she was mentally stable and able to cope. The story ends on a hopeful note.

The book has been so painstakingly written that teenage readers can empathize with Deborah in her struggle between fantasy and reality. Young people are very interested in mental health and heartily recommend this story to one another.

The book is best introduced to individuals by a capsule review. An understanding of the situation and characters can be gained only by reading the details and these would not make a good book talk.

Although *The Monday Voices* by Greenberg is not about persons with mental problems, it will still appeal to those who were fascinated by the author's handling of Deborah's problems. It is the story of Ralph Oakland, a counselor at the State Department of Vocational Rehabilitation and the people he helps. Among his many cases are an illiterate Mexican peon who speaks very broken English, is on welfare, and has a large family; a beautiful mentally retarded girl who wants to become a secretary; an exconvict with prison training as a barber who is refused a license by the union; and a boy who thinks he has a severe physical handicap and is painfully shy. Basing her story on her own experiences, Sylvia Plath in her novel *The Bell Jar* tells about some of the wild times that Esther Greenwood, a naive, small-town girl had when she was one of twelve college

women who won a New York fashion magazine contest. She was invited to work at the magazine for a month the summer at the end of her junior year. When she returned home, she had a mental breakdown and, after trying to kill herself, she was committed to a hospital. Young readers wanting further information about life in a mental institution can read *Bellevue Is a State of Mind* by Anne Barry in which the author contrived to be committed to the ward for mentally ill women at Bellevue to permit her to observe the patients and their treatment, and to experience firsthand what it is like to be one of them. Rebelling against the world as he saw it, Mark Vonnegut went to British Columbia to set up a rural commune. There he succumbed to schizophrenia and ended up in a mental hospital. For much of *The Eden Express* he describes his schizophrenic thoughts, feelings, and actions. For some people the multitude of four-letter words and Mark's discussion of his sexuality may be objectionable. In *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest* by Ken Kesey, a young inmate in a mental hospital relates the story of McMurphy who committed himself because he thought life in the hospital would be easier than serving a six-months' sentence on the work farm. He badly upset the routine of the ward in order to badger Miss Ratched, the head nurse whom everyone disliked. In revenge she ordered an operation on McMurphy which left him a vegetable.

GREENE, GRAHAM

The Human Factor

1978. Simon & Schuster

Maurice Castle, a member of the British Secret Service, had served for years in South Africa as administrator of the Pretoria office before a bad situation there forced his withdrawal to London. Considered a model employee, he was put in charge of Section 6A of the African division of the Foreign Office. Arthur Davis, a younger man, worked with him. Shortly after the story opens, Colonel Daintry, who had recently taken over security, learned that a leak was occurring in one of the African sections, probably 6A. Davis seemed the logical suspect. To avoid making public the existence of the leak, the commissioner, Sir John Hargreaves, did not want Davis brought to trial. Instead he wanted the guilty man to die by what would appear to be natural causes. Dr. Percival, another employee, and the one selected as the executioner, asked Davis to come to his office for a physical checkup. Davis hoped the examination meant he was being considered for a post abroad. Castle was informed by Sir John that he would be dealing with Cornelius Muller, a South African who was coming to London, an assignment Castle wanted to avoid, because Muller had tried to blackmail him in South Africa. However, Sir John insisted, telling Castle just how much information to

let Muller have. When Muller arrived, he told Castle that a Communist agent named Carson had died in prison. Carson was the man who had saved Sarah, the Bantu girl Castle intended to marry, by successfully smuggling her out of South Africa. The reader will be almost halfway through the book, before Castle is revealed as the traitor. It was when Sir John went to Washington and put Percival in charge that the latter quickly disposed of Davis. With Davis dead, Castle realized he could make no further reports to the Russians. Muller went to Germany and on his return gave Castle some notes about his meeting in Bonn. Castle knew he would have to forward these notes to his Russian contact. When he tried to do it by telephone in the usual way, there was no reply. That night he confessed to Sarah that he had been giving the Russians information in gratitude for their having rescued her. Meanwhile Muller told Sir John that his intuition told him not to trust Castle. The next morning, convinced that he was suspected, Castle called the emergency number the Russians had given him, not certain whether they would respond or the police would arrive first. The Russians came with appropriate disguises and plane tickets, enabling Castle to reach Moscow with little difficulty. They promised to bring Sarah and Sam, their son, but the little boy did not have a passport and the government refused to give him one. Because Sarah would not leave without Sam, the story ends on this unsatisfactory note.

Greene has written a good novel, with well-delineated characters in which the reader's sympathy is with Castle, even though he is a traitor. He loved his wife very much and the only way he could repay the Russians for her rescue was through the information he gave them. This is the human factor that endangers any system where secrecy is of utmost importance — a point which young people can discuss.

A book talk could be constructed by describing Castle and Davis.

Young people will also enjoy *The Dark Goddess* by Marvin H. Albert. In it Alexander Rhalles, special adviser to the President of the United States, must furnish details of his meetings with the President to the Russians because they secretly hold his wife, who is supposed to have died in an accident. This book, however, has a more cheerful ending. Another story of intrigue, *The Winter Spy* by Paul Henissart, may be suggested to teenagers. It concerns an important member of the Hungarian Political Police whom the powers that be have decided to eliminate. Realizing this, the man manages to elude his enemies until just before the story ends. Yet another, *The Day of the Jackal* by Frederick Forsyth, takes place in France. In 1963 the OAS (Secret Army Organization) was determined to kill President Charles de Gaulle for withdrawing France from Algeria. Three OAS leaders hire a killer, whose code name is Jackal, to assassinate de Gaulle.

HALEY, ALEX

Roots

1976. Doubleday.

Early in the spring of 1750 Kunta Kinte was born in the Moslem village of Juffure in The Gambia. Haley describes the naming ceremony, the customs of the village, the little boy's home training, schooling, and his first duties in the settlement. At the age of ten his schooling completed, Kunta's father gave him a pair of goats so that he could start his own herd. A year or so later the boy was taken away from the village with twenty-two other lads for manhood training, a rugged period that lasted for four months. The boys who passed the requirements were brought back to the village and given new duties to perform. One day, while in the forest, Kunta was captured by a slave trader and taken to a camp where he was sold to a slaver and brought by ship to the United States, never to see his family or village again. So badly mistreated was he by his owner that his only thought was to escape; this he managed to do four times. The first three times he was caught and beaten almost to death. The last time he ran away, one of his captors chopped off the front half of one of his feet. It was a long time before he recovered from that mutilation. The doctor who took care of him was the brother of Kunta's owner. He bought Kunta from his brother because he was so incensed by the way the young slave had been treated. Kunta looked down on the other slaves and for a long time was not the least bit friendly. Eventually he was put to work in the garden and, because he was lonely, he gradually began to melt a little. The fiddler and the gardener finally befriended him and taught him to speak some English. After Kunta became coachman for the doctor, he married Bell, the master's cook. They had one daughter whom he named Kizzy. He was devoted to the little girl and she loved to have him tell her about his life in Africa and to teach her words in his language. The doctor was quite civil to his slaves unless one of them broke a rule. Kizzy had learned to write and made out a travel pass that one of the young slaves used to escape. When the doctor found out, he sold Kizzy immediately in spite of her parents' pleas for mercy. Kizzy was raped repeatedly by her new owner, Mr. Lea, and had a son by him whom she named George. Lea had been a poor cracker who had won a fighting cock in a raffle. He made enough money by betting to buy a small piece of land, acquired four old slaves, and raised fighting cocks. Mingo was the slave who helped him train the birds. When George was about twelve, he was sent down to help Mingo and immediately became dedicated to cock fighting. Eventually George replaced Mingo and traveled with Mr. Lea and the cocks to many matches. He married a girl from another plantation; she too was bought by Mr. Lea so the couple could live together. They produced a large family. One of their sons, Tom, became a blacksmith. When

the slaves were freed after the Civil War, it was Tom who set up the first business. The others managed to get land and continued to work in the fields. It was Tom's daughter, Cynthia, who became the author's grandmother. Each generation told the next the stories that Kunta had told Kizzy, so proud were they of their African ancestor and heritage. At the end Haley tells how the African words that had been handed down to him enabled him to trace his family back to The Gambia.

Haley has made his characters come alive so well that the reader becomes very involved in the fate of each one. His narrative includes horror stories of the treatment which blacks and whites meted out to one another. The book is easy to read, though long, and many young people have enjoyed it.

There are several scenes, any one of which could be used in a book talk: manhood training in chapters 23–25, Kunta's last escape, chapters 49–50, Kunta opposes Kizzy's baptism in chapter 73, the fiddler saves money earned by playing at nine hundred dances to buy his freedom, chapter 79.

The African by Harold Courlander is the story of Hwesuhumu, a Dahomean boy, who was captured by slave traders and sold to a plantation owner in Georgia. Several years later he was forced to flee after he was drawn into a fight between a friend and a white overseer who was killed. The latter part of the story is about his wanderings. Up to page 151 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X,* Malcolm Little describes how he sank deeper and deeper into a life of crime, immorality, and drugs to impress upon the reader how complete his reformation was when it finally came. He was not quite twenty-one when he was sentenced to ten years on fourteen counts of burglary. While in prison he was introduced to the Muslim religion by his brothers and sisters. He became a disciple of Elijah Muhammad after being released from prison, preaching for him, helping to convert blacks and open new temples. After twelve years he discovered that Elijah Muhammad had committed adultery and was abetting those jealous of Malcolm to oust him from the organization and to kill him. These people eventually succeeded.

HANGEN, PATRICIA

Tell Him That I Heard

1977. Harper.

Welles Hangen's first job upon graduating from Brown University was with the Paris *Herald,* which was dedicated to training promising young newsmen. Before long the *New York Times* offered him a place in its Frankfurt bureau with the chance of becoming its chief. Meanwhile Pat Dana was studying at Stanford University. She, too, soon found herself in the news business and four years later was sent to Athens as a press officer with the American Embassy. Welles

found her there when he went to inquire about a recent earthquake in Greece. Pat could not understand why he wanted to see the devastated area after she had described it. Thus she learned that Welles believed in firsthand reporting. Upon his return to Athens, he asked her to go to dinner with him. The date was a big success and before long they were married, having decided that life together would be a real adventure. They had just begun to settle into an apartment in Cairo when a cable sent Welles to Lebanon. Pat went along but was not content to wait for her husband in a hotel room. When she asked to go along with him, he readily acquiesced. Because Welles had to broadcast directly to New York and the only way to reach the transmitter was to walk through barricaded streets, that's what they did, all the while hoping they would not be gunned down. Pat recounts one hair-raising adventure after another in Lebanon, Syria, Iraq, Jordan, and Kuwait. When she was not with Welles and he was delayed, she worried about him; one evening to allay her fears he explained that she need not worry because he was always careful. After five months Pat was sent on assignment to Libya to report on some of UNICEF's children's aid projects. When she finished, she was to meet Welles in Cairo. Upon arrival she discovered that Welles was not allowed to enter Egypt and she was not allowed to leave. She was not even permitted to write to him. After ten days, with several people pulling strings, the Egyptian government decided it was all a mistake and welcomed Welles. Next he opened a news bureau for the National Broadcasting Company in New Delhi; later he was assigned to Germany. At this point they decided to adopt a child, since they had not produced one of their own. A baby boy was offered to them while Welles attended classes at Columbia to study Chinese affairs. When the Cultural Revolution began in China, Pat and Welles were ready for assignment there. They went to live in a big old mansion on Victoria Peak in Hong Kong. Three years later they were back in the United States to collect their baby daughter from the same agency. It was after this that Welles went to Cambodia where he was eventually captured by the enemy in 1970. Pat stayed on in the house in Hong Kong, sure that Welles was all right and would return. She and many other people made every contact possible to get news of Welles, but there was never any word of him and seventeen other prisoners taken at the same time.

This is not just the experiences of two journalists and their adventures around the world. It is also a love story of great tenderness. The book is significant because the integrity, courage, and selflessness of the Hangens have appeal for both girls and boys.

For a book talk, tell of the day King Hussein called a press conference, at which the reporters were served thick, perfumed coffee in tiny cups. Because it would have been insulting not to drink it, Pat had to get it down. But she could not stop the footman from refilling her cup until she learned the proper etiquette for saying, "no, thank

you," pages 61–63. Another incident that could be used in a book talk is the time that Pat and Welles wanted to leave Egypt to go to New Delhi and were caused so much anxiety by the Egyptian government, pages 105–9.

Portrait of Myself by Margaret Bourke-White is the autobiography of a noted photographer who reported news for many years in the United States and abroad. This has been a favorite with many young people. Dan Rather has much the same attitude toward news gathering as Welles Hangen had. His autobiography, *The Camera Never Blinks,* also can be heartily recommended. In *Good Evening, Everybody* Lowell Thomas recounts his early experiences as a newsman. Edward Behr in *Bearings; A Foreign Correspondent's Life Behind the Lines* describes his experiences as a soldier in India during World War II and as a reporter in many wartorn areas of the world. This book will appeal to those interested in world history of the last thirty years. Also suggest a book about another married couple, both journalists — *The Light on Synanon* by David and Cathy Mitchell with Richard Ofshe. The Mitchells, shortly after buying a small weekly newspaper, *The Point Reyes Light,* in California, began to expose the questionable tactics of Synanon, a multimillion dollar cult in their county, urging the county and state governments to do something about the abuses. Ofshe, a college professor who had done research on Synanon, joined forces with the Mitchells. As a result of their crusade *The Light* was awarded the 1979 Pulitzer Prize for Meritorious Public Service.

HARDY, THOMAS

The Mayor of Casterbridge

[1886]

Under the influence of too much rum, Michael Henchard, an itinerant hay-trusser, traded his wife Susan and his little daughter for five guineas to a sailor, Richard Newson. The latter, a kindly man, was good to his newly acquired family. Simple soul that Susan was, she stayed with Newson as his wife, perfectly content until a friend, to whom she confided her secret, ridiculed her for accepting such a situation. A time of sadness and doubt followed. Finally Susan told Newson that she thought she could no longer stay with him. To give Susan a way out of her predicament, the sailor-husband devised a plot so that she would believe he had been lost at sea. Then with her daughter Elizabeth Jane, now grown, she set out in search of Henchard. He had prospered in the eighteen years that had passed, after settling in Casterbridge where he had become a well-to-do merchant and mayor of the town. Desirous of atoning for his sin against her, Michael arranged with Susan to court her as the Widow Newson and marry her. This would save his face, since the community did not know of his early marriage to her. Life was serene for the family until

Michael became jealous of his young manager, Donald Farfrae, who had become a real asset to his grain business. Their relationship went from bad to worse, and finally Henchard asked Farfrae to leave and stop seeing Elizabeth. About this time Susan died. Several events occurred to disturb the relationship between father and daughter. Elizabeth asked his permission to leave after she secured a position as housekeeper-companion to a lady she had met in the park. Henchard was quite upset when he found that she was living with his former mistress, Lucetta. Donald Farfrae's falling in love with Lucetta was the last straw. Elizabeth's future seemed always to be marred by unhappiness, but at the end of the story her situation brightens.

Easier to read than some of Hardy's other novels, the book is a good introduction to this author. Although the story has some of the melancholy typical of Hardy, the reader will not mourn for Henchard's bitter end since the man more or less deserved what life dealt him for his early mistreatment of Susan and Elizabeth Jane.

To promote interest mention Henchard's appalling act, chapter 1, and then indicate his dilemma when Susan confronts him eighteen years later, chapter 11.

Also suggest *Far from the Madding Crowd* by Hardy. Shortly after pretty young Bathsheba Everdene had visited her uncle, he died and left her his farm, which she proceeded to manage with some very capable help. As a joke she sent an unsigned valentine to Mr. Boldwood, the bachelor owner of a neighboring farm who had never paid any attention to her. He soon figured out who the writer was and before long fell in love with her. Bathsheba had other suitors, but the one she finally married was the poorest choice of the lot. Her life was extremely unhappy before she was rid of him. In *Under the Greenwood Tree*, also by Hardy, Fancy Day was the pretty, young, new teacher in the village whom Dick Dewey had apparently never noticed until the Mellstock church choir sang carols under her window on Christmas Eve. Then he was badly smitten, with plenty of competition trying to win her hand.

HASTINGS, MAX

Yoni: Hero of Entebbe

1979. Dial/James Wade.

His death at Entebbe, which introduced Yoni Netanyahu as a hero to the world, is only a small part of this biography of an outstanding young man who put his country's survival before personal ambition, his family, and his own happiness. Yoni's father had begun to work for the Revisionist Party in Palestine while a young student at the Hebrew University and, in his writing and speaking in Palestine, London, and the United States, argued for a separate Jewish state and the creation of a Jewish army. Thus it is no wonder that his sons were deeply interested in the welfare of Israel. Yoni, the eldest son,

had been educated partly in the United States and partly in Israel. He was an excellent student who immersed himself in Jewish history. In 1964 Yoni began his twenty-six months of compulsory service in the Israeli Army. Hastings explains in detail the grueling training by which young conscripts are molded into hardened paratroopers, Yoni's choice for specialization. Because he had always been athletic, he had a physical toughness which, added to his native intelligence and fierce determination to succeed, made him the standout in his group. It was natural for him to go on to officer's school where he again excelled. In his next assignment as platoon commander in the paratroops, he was so much more exacting in training his men than other commanders that his platoon did not know what to make of him, but later they realized they possessed a keen edge missing in other groups. Yoni had intended to finish his education when his army stint was over, but with the breakout of the 1967 war, he rejoined the paratroops and was badly wounded. After his release from the hospital, he married, and spent a year in the United States attending classes at Harvard. Because Yoni felt the army needed him in the critical years ahead, he reenlisted in 1969. In 1976 terrorists hijacked the Air France plane from Tel Aviv over the Mediterranean that ended up at Entebbe in Uganda. Contrary to expectations, the government of Israel gave the military permission to attempt a rescue of the hostages. Yoni, one of the mission's planners, and his men carried out the brilliantly executed rescue. Unfortunately Yoni was one of the five Israelis who died; the other four were hostages.

Readers will gain from Yoni some understanding of Israel and its problems, a dedicated citizen's viewpoint. He believed the Israeli government erred in not allowing the military to take offensive action and hand the Arabs a resounding defeat. He also felt that Israeli Intelligence had failed miserably in not giving the armed forces warning of the buildup of Arab forces prior to the Yom Kippur War. He criticized the government for giving in to American pressures and wondered whether the Israelis would soon be so worn out by the constant threat of all-out war and the attacks by the Arabs that they would give up the struggle to keep a homeland of their own. The author indicates Yoni's devotion to his parents and brothers by quoting freely from many of the young man's letters to them. The book, based on interviews with colleagues, friends, and family, is so compelling that interest in the subject grows with each page.

Yoni's basic training in the army began in August 1964, pages 33–42; his part in the Six Day War could also be used in a book talk, pages 63–84; or the speaker may prefer to do as the author does in the prologue and tell about the rescue at Entebbe, pages 6–16.

In the novel *17 Ben Gurion* by Jack Hoffenberg, the Israelis are up against a new Arab organization dedicated to totally destroying them. This is the story of their fight and survival. In another novel,

Dawn by Eliezer Wiesel, Elisha, an eighteen-year-old member of the Israeli resistance movement in Palestine after World War II, is assigned to kill in reprisal a young British officer whom the Zionists have captured if David ben Moshe, captured by the British, is hanged. Elisha's suffering before he carries out his assignment is poignantly described. In *Ultimatum* by Antony Trew, a group of Palestinians tried to enforce their demands for an independent Palestine by placing a stolen nuclear warhead in London and threatening to detonate it. Marvin Kalb, having traveled with the United States Secretary of State himself, has the background on which to base his novel, *In the National Interest.* This story about the complex situation in the Middle East and the suppression of information about double agents can be recommended to readers who liked the other titles described here.

HAWTHORNE, NATHANIEL

The Scarlet Letter

[1850]

Hester Pryne, daughter of a poor, aristocratic family, had married a well-to-do, scholarly, older man. He sent Hester to the Puritan settlement of Boston, intending to follow her shortly but was delayed. As the story opens, Hester, who has been in the new world two years, has become pregnant, and is being put on public display on the platform of the pillory to shame her before the townspeople. She has also been condemned to wear the capital letter "A" on the bosom of her dress as a symbol of her downfall. Standing with her child in her arms, she is exhorted to reveal the name of the man who ruined her, but refuses to do so. Suddenly she sees her missing husband in the crowd and becomes so distraught that she is returned to jail where the jailer decides she should have the attentions of a doctor. A stranger named Roger Chillingworth, who is actually Hester's husband, offers his services. He quiets her, tells her not to reveal his identity, and promises that he will find out who her lover was. When she is released from jail, she takes over a deserted cottage on the outskirts of the village and begins to earn her living by fine sewing. The baby, whom Hester had named Pearl, grows to be a lovely little girl, but with a quality of impishness the mother finds difficult to restrain. Somehow Hester learns that there are people in Boston who believe Pearl is of demon origin and should be taken away from her. At a meeting with the governor, the village ministers, and Roger Chillingworth, Hester is defended by Arthur Dimmesdale, the young minister, who pleads so convincingly in her behalf that the others acquiesce, allowing her to keep Pearl. However, Chillingworth's suspicions concerning the child's father have now been aroused. Because of Dimmesdale's failing health, some of his parishioners feel he is too saintly for this earth. Before long Chillingworth contrives to spend more and more time with Dimmesdale, and his

malice toward the young minister becomes increasingly apparent. Dimmesdale confesses from the pulpit that he is the vilest sinner, yet his disbelieving congregation continues to venerate him. He scourges himself, fasts, keeps vigils, and nearly drives himself insane with his guilt. As the years pass, Hester gives so much help to the poor, the sick, and the troubled that people begin to think of the "A" she wears as standing for the word "able." Finally realizing how evil Chillingworth has become, she arranges a meeting with him to warn him she is going to tell Dimmesdale who he is. When he consents, she waylays the minister in the nearby forest and urges him to leave the village. Dimmesdale confesses that he is not strong enough to go alone, so she promises to go with him. But their plans are thwarted when Dimmesdale overexerts himself during his last sermon and falls dying. He now confesses his sin in public. Chillingworth dies a year later, leaving his wealth to Pearl. She and her mother are able to go to England until Pearl has grown up and married. Hester then returns to the cottage in Boston to resume her former existence.

The book is not difficult and gives the reader a good picture of the Puritans and their way of life in early Boston.

A summary of the first part of the story is enough to arouse the readers' interest.

Belief in the supernatural and evil spirits is introduced in *The Scarlet Letter*, but it is not a leading theme in Hawthorne's tale. It is, however, in *The Crucible* by Arthur Miller, who points out how susceptible those early colonists were to superstition. Abigail, a young maid-of-all-work in the Proctor household in colonial Salem, plots to get rid of Mrs. Proctor by accusing her of witchcraft. The young woman is involved with Mr. Proctor; once his wife is put to death, he'd be free to marry Abigail. A nonfiction, readable view of life in the early days of colonial New England is *The Devil in Massachusetts* by Marion Starkey, also centered in Salem. Another account of life in early Massachusetts is *Witnesses* by Marcy Heidish. In this dramatic, well-told story, Anne Hutchinson fights desperately for religious freedom but is exiled from the community for her heresy. Anya Seton's *The Winthrop Woman*, a fascinating historical novel about the controversial woman named Elizabeth Fanes Winthrop, is not only quite a love story but also accurately recreates the Massachusetts Bay colony and other early settlements along the East Coast. Anne Hutchinson is one of the many notable persons included.

HEIDISH, MARCY

A Woman Called Moses

1976. Houghton Mifflin.

On the way home after the Civil War had ended, Harriet Tubman met one of the former slaves she had guided North to freedom. As a result of that meeting she began to recall her life as a slave and as the

mystical figure of Moses who led people out of slavery to the Promised Land. Her earliest memory was seeing a sister taken off to be sold. When Harriet was old enough to work, she wanted to go into the fields, but instead was tried at other tasks that she hated and did badly. Finally she was sent to the fields to work and there she was happy. After several years, she met a young black loaned from another plantation who was determined to escape and make his way North. Harriet promised to help if she could go with him. When they were surprised by the overseer in their preparations, she was beaten so badly she sustained injuries from which she never fully recovered, but Jim got away. Once she was well enough to work, she joined her father in the woodlot, developing there into a powerful young woman able to do a man's work. Her master eventually put her on special jobs and allowed her to keep some of the money she earned. On one of these jobs she met John Tubman, a free Negro, whom she married. When she tried to buy her freedom and learned that she did not have nearly enough money, she made up her mind to run away. Harriet stopped to see the Quaker woman for whom she worked at times and learned from that woman where to find other people willing to help her on her way. Although Harriet did get a two-hour boat ride not long after she started out, for most of the way she had to walk in the water at the edge of the river until she was near collapse. Her food gave out, she had a fever, but she pushed on until she fell exhausted in a cornfield. The Lord on whom she depended was watching over her, because she was found by a Quaker and hidden in a secret place where she lay for the better part of a week before she was fit to go on. Her rescuer told her where to find another friend. On the third day a free Negro took her in his cart as far as Wilmington, Delaware. There she called at another Quaker's home and met Thomas Garrett who was to help her many times on her later journeys. When Harriet reached Philadelphia, there were many people to help her find work and a place to live. After a year she wanted her family to come North. Unable to find anyone to bring them, she decided to go herself. Her father refused to come, and her brothers were scattered, so she gave others the chance to go North. Twelve joined her. After she had made fourteen trips successfully bringing people North, she became known as Moses. Her former master suspected who Moses was and he kept raising the reward for her capture until it reached $20,000. The author describes in detail the special trip at Christmas to bring her parents out and her last one. She also pictures life in the black settlement at St. Catharine's in Canada to which many of the slaves went.

This account, told in the form of a novel, is well done, the character of Harriet is vividly and sympathetically portrayed, and the story holds the reader's interest to the very end.

A book talk can begin with Harriet's quarrel with her husband, John Tubman. She wanted to escape, but he did not want to leave.

John told Harriet that her mother had been freed in a previous master's will, but because no one had told her she was free, she had been sold back into slavery. The next time Harriet went to town, she paid a lawyer to check and found John's story was true. This knowledge made her all the more determined to get away, but her dear Aunt Juba's death gave her the impetus to carry out her plan, pages 87–99.

Ernest Gaines in *The Autobiography of Miss Jane Pittman* follows Jane from the end of the Civil War, when she was eleven or twelve years old, to her death, when she was more than one hundred years old. She had never left Louisiana, had witnessed but few changes in the lives of the blacks during her lifetime, but shortly before her death the civil rights movement began to escalate. And Jane looked eagerly toward taking part in her first freedom march. Also suggest *Jubilee* by Margaret Walker. In this unforgettable book the reader follows Vyry through her childhood, teens, and adult years in the South before, during, and after the Civil War.

HELMS, TOM

Against All Odds

1978. Crowell.

One rainy spring day the car in which Tom Helms was hitchhiking home from his first year in college left the highway and tumbled down an embankment. The driver was thrown clear but Helms suffered a broken neck. After six hours on the operating table he was placed in bed with his head immobile. Paralyzed from the neck down, he was unable to move his body. When the local anesthetic wore off, the pain hit him. He describes this so vividly that the reader can almost feel it too. As soon as the swelling in his neck went down and there was no longer any pressure on the spinal cord, Tom began to wonder when he could begin to move his body. He decided to put all his effort into moving his big toe, concentrating so hard, he blanked everything else out. Even though the doctor told him that he probably would always be paralyzed, Tom kept working on his toe. He was sure that if he could move that, the rest of his body would respond. One day he asked his mother to look at his right foot because he thought he could feel his toe moving. However, she said she saw no movement, no matter how hard he tried. Then she discovered that it was a thumb he was wiggling. Encouraged, Tom kept at it and two days later the toe did move. He was on the way to recovery. Next he was transferred to another hospital that specialized in working with quadriplegics, where he worked with Don Stirewalt, an excellent physical therapist who challenged Tom to surpass his expectations. Sharing Tom's room were two quadriplegic boys, neither of whom would try to do anything for himself. Unlike them, and in about seven months, Tom walked out of that hospital. He describes the excruciatingly painful exercises he repeated day

after day. He also recalls visits of friends with whom he exchanged reminiscences of the high-spirited teenage pranks and experiments they had shared and the girls they had dated. Tom's narrative divulges nothing about the next two years back at college, but at the beginning of his senior year he met Cory Benton and fell in love. They had a great year together and decided to get married in the fall. When Cory's mother persuaded her to wait a year; Tom would not agree, so they parted. Unloading the car at home after graduation, he lost his balance on the steps of the house and fell, breaking his neck again. He persevered through yet another grueling course of rehabilitative therapy, but unfortunately this time his recovery took longer and was incomplete. He was able to walk, though with some difficulty. Once he was well enough to start looking for a job, he kept at it for over a year without success. No one wanted to hire a partially handicapped person. Although other quadriplegics known to Tom had become so despondent, they had ended their lives, the same determination that made Tom fight his way back from paralysis took charge again. According to the note on the book jacket, he is now an employment counselor for the state of North Carolina.

Tom had faith from the very beginning that with God's help he would recover. But he also knew that to overcome his disability he would need determination, courage, concentration, and fury to force himself beyond his limits. Tom's frank, vivid writing engages readers so completely that they too experience his struggle to once more become a functioning, healthy human being.

The first time Tom tried to walk with the parallel bars could be used for a book talk, pages 93–95. Just before Tom leaves the hospital, the father of one of his roommates, a religious fanatic, puts a gun to Tom's head, saying he is going to kill them all; how Tom saved them, pages 121–25, could also be used.

In *One Step at a Time* by Lenor Madruga, a young woman with a husband and two children has her left leg and part of the hip removed because of cancer; she learns to use an artificial limb so well that she is able to walk, dance, and ride horseback, as well as take care of her family and house. Another book that can be suggested is *To Live Again* by Ana Maria Trenchi DeBotazzi. When she was twenty-three, Ana Maria, who had given major recitals and concerts all over Europe, Central America, and South America, was involved in a serious automobile accident and severely injured. Although the doctor said she would never be able to resume her musical career, she persevered and proved him wrong. Blind since the age of eight, David Hartman was encouraged to live as normal a life as possible. Because he liked biology in high school, he decided to become a doctor. In *White Coat, White Cane,* he tells how he achieved his goal of being the first blind person to graduate with an M.D. degree. *Thursday's Child* is Sam Poole, Victoria Poole's teenage son, who had an enlarged heart; only a transplant would save his life. The

author not only takes the reader through the agonies of Sam's illness, she also tells a pleasing family story.

HEMINGWAY, ERNEST

For Whom the Bell Tolls

1940. Scribner.

During the Spanish Civil War, a young American in the Republican forces, Robert Jordan, was assigned to blow up the bridge over which enemy reinforcements would come during the attack on the mountain pass by a division of the Republican army. Anselm, an old man familiar with the area, acted as his guide and helped to carry the explosives. A band of guerrillas who would aid Robert lived in a cave not far from the bridge. Its leader was Pablo, whose wife Pilar prepared the meals. She was assisted by a young woman who had been badly mistreated by the fascists. The other five men acted as guards in the area. When Robert was taken up to the cave for a meal, he and the girl Maria were attracted to one another immediately. Pablo soon made it known to Robert that he did not favor blowing up the bridge, but Pilar and the other guerrillas outvoted him. Pablo was demoted and Pilar took command. After this Robert never completely trusted Pablo and was very careful that someone was always guarding his backpacks. That night Pilor allowed Maria to share Robert's sleeping bag. Pilar had read Robert's hand and, believing he would die on this mission, wanted to give him a beautiful final three days. The next afternoon Pilar and Maria took Robert to visit another small band of guerrillas under the leadership of El Sordo, who would also help him. During the night it snowed, enabling the rebel cavalry to track El Sordo and his men who had gone on a horse-stealing raid; with the help of three planes that bombed and strafed, they wiped out El Sordo's group. The night before the planned attack Pablo cut Robert's backpacks and made off with the detonating devices from under Pilar's nose. After some thought, Robert decided he could detonate the explosive with grenades. However, with Pablo gone, he would be short of men to eliminate the sentries at the fascist guardpost and those at the sawmill. Just before Robert and the guerrillas set out, Pablo returned with several men he had recruited, sorry for what he had done and eager to cooperate. Although Robert did succeed in destroying the bridge, Anselmo was killed, as were several of the guerrillas who had attacked the mill and the guardpost. Robert waited with the horses for the survivors to return. As they all started to make their escape, Robert's horse was shot. Collapsing on the embankment above the road, the body of the horse fell on Robert, pinning his leg underneath. Knowing that his thigh was so badly broken that he could not go on, Robert sent the others on their way and, with his submachine gun at the ready, prepared to die at his post.

Hemingway has created some memorable characters in this novel providing the reader with an isolated and unimportant incident of the Spanish Civil War to show how a principled American volunteer in the Loyalist forces carried out a hazardous assignment and faced death. Young people who know something about the situation in Iran in 1979 and 1980 can be told that much the same conditions were present in Spain. Ignorance, self-interest, greed, brutality, religious fanaticism together with the struggle for political power brought tragedy to countless people.

The first part of the foregoing annotation may be sufficient for a book talk, but the speaker who wants to add some other facts, can include the incident in which Robert went with Anselm to scrutinize the bridge and the layout of the enemy's sentry boxes and headquarters, pages 35–37, or when he sends Rafael to check up on the sawmill, pages 78–79.

At one time Robert sent a messenger to an officer in the Republican Army and the reader wonders why the man was sent from pillar to post or totally ignored when he reached his destination. The librarian might recommend *Between the Bullet and the Lie* by Cecil Eby, a history of the American volunteers in the Spanish Civil War and a real eye-opener, in which Hemingway and his story are mentioned. *Dark and Bloody Ground* by Francisco Pérez López is another true account of the Spanish Civil War. At first the author was a soldier in the International Brigade, but after his capture and escape he became a guerrilla fighter as he tried to get back to France and safety. Traveling mostly on foot, he and men who joined him along the way met many enemies and killed them without compunction. There is not so much emphasis here on the poor leadership and organization of the Republican Army that is found in the books mentioned above. If the young person wants other true stories about resistance fighters, saboteurs, and military personnel working in small groups against the enemy, the librarian can recommend *Behind Enemy Lines* by James Dean Sanderson who tells about the experiences of men in World War II.

HERBERT, FRANK

Dune

1965. Chilton.

Shaddam IV, Emperor of the known universe, feared Duke Leto Atreides, whose popularity, integrity, and growing fortune he viewed as a threat to his rule. Hoping to eliminate Leto, the Emperor banished him from the beautiful, well-watered planet of Caladan to Arrakis, which was a burning desert. Baron Harkonnen, also Leto's enemy, plotted with the Emperor. The Duke's young son Paul was

being carefully trained to succeed his father. The boy's mother, Lady Jessica, was a member of the Bene Gesserit, an ancient order for women which aimed for world domination. A short time after the family and its retainers had settled on Arrakis, a member of their retinue betrayed them to Harkonnen's men, who captured the family. Although the Duke's men fought bravely, most of them were eventually killed; the Duke also died. But Paul and his mother, who had been left in the desert to perish were rescued by the Fremen, who were native to the planet and as yet unsubdued by any of the invaders. Soon realizing that Paul and his mother had unusual powers, the Fremen treated both royally. Over a period of several years Paul helped the Fremen to train their forces and build up their arsenal. Eventually they were able to defeat the combined armies of the Emperor and Harkonnen.

Herbert has written a very long story with many unfamiliar terms (explained in the glossary) and much discussion of other-world philosophic, mystic, and religious beliefs. The menace never lets up, keeping the reader on tenterhooks, continually expecting the worst. This is a book that is very popular with better teenage readers who enjoy science fiction.

A book talk might be worked up from the test that Paul experiences when he is fifteen, pages 6–9 or from the first attempt on Paul's life after he reaches Arrakis, pages 53–55. On one occasion Paul and his father rescue a crew from a sandworm, pages 92–100.

Dune Messiah, the second book in the trilogy, tells of the empire Paul established and the plot of dissidents against him. However, this book is not so exciting or interesting as its predecessor. At the end of the story twins, a boy and a girl, are born to Paul and his beloved concubine, who dies. The boy is named for Paul's father. Knowing that he has a son to succeed him, Paul, who had been blinded in an enemy atomic attack, dies in the desert, as any blinded Fremen would do. In the third book, *Children of Dune*, Paul's sister Alia is Regent for the twins, Leto and Ghanima, who are still children. Because they have inherited all the knowledge of their ancestors, the twins are mature beyond their years and realize Alia has been possessed by an evil spirit that is plotting the downfall of the Atreides dynasty. Plots and counterplots make for a complicated story, the outcome of which is not wholly a victory for the twins in this final volume of the trilogy. Also suggest *The Mote in God's Eye* by Larry Niven and Jerry Pourrelle. Two spaceships are sent to the Mote whose inhabitants are technologically far in advance of humans. The Moties want permission to people some unoccupied planets in the Empire and the Commission is too naive to see the dangers of allowing this until one of the men who had spent months on the Mote points out the ways in which the Moties deceive humans.

HERBERT, FRANK

Soul Catcher

1972. Putnam.

Charles Hobuhet, an American Indian working for his doctorate in anthropology, was outraged and deeply distressed by the death of his young sister who had been ravished by some drunken loggers. In his anguish he turned to the wilderness of the Olympic Mountains to find solace, there performing some of the ancient rituals he had learned from his grandfather. One day in the wilderness, a bee lighted on his hand. Watching it, he realized that it was Soul Catcher, the greatest of the spirits. The bee spoke to him, telling him what he was to do to avenge his sister's death: find and kill an innocent white person, someone so important that the whites would feel the death deeply. Charles was a counselor in an exclusive boys' camp with eight boys under his jurisdiction. Among them was David Marshall, son of the new United States Undersecretary of State, who obviously fulfilled the requirements. Without difficulty Charles lured the boy away from camp one night and walked with him deep into the mountains where they would be safe from discovery. The difficult trek exhausted the lad, but he uncomplainingly followed the counselor's instructions to the letter. Although the Indian could not help but admire the boy, he persisted in his plan and demanded to be called Katsuk and that David answer to the name of Hoquat, the term the Indians used for whites. A day or so later, they encountered a hiker who recognized Katsuk as a student in one of his classes and stopped to talk. Katsuk had no choice but to kill the hiker and dispose of the body. As they went on deeper into the wilderness, David now was definitely afraid of Katsuk. On the fifth night after the kidnapping, they heard people singing; Katsuk recognized them as his own people who were looking for him. The next morning he and David went down to their camp. The young woman who had expected to marry him tried twice to foil Katsuk's plan, but was unsuccessful. Then, because the other Indians tried to persuade Katsuk to give up his plan for David, he left their camp, dragging the boy along with him to a nearby abandoned mine, sure that his people would not betray him. The relationship between Katsuk and David, however, had deepened, saddening Katsuk when he thought of what he must do. On the seventh day, they rested beside a river which brought a limb of a tree, depositing it at Katsuk's feet. He sensed that the spirits had given him the wood to make the bow with which to kill David. While Katsuk was working on the wood, David escaped, but two days later, upon reaching a meadow where he could have gotten help, there was Katsuk, who had taken a short-cut. The ravens warned that people were nearby, people Katsuk knew were looking for him. David urged his friend to escape, promising not to tell about the murdered hiker and to say he had gone with

Charles willingly. Katsuk moved away to where he had hidden the bow and arrow and shot David, killing him instantly. When the searchers reached them, they found Katsuk with the boy cradled in his arms, singing the death song one sings for a friend.

This is a very well written, dramatic story. The reader's sympathy is with both Katsuk and David and the hope is that the Indian will not be able to carry out his plan. The development of David as a character is excellent; the Indian lore is well-handled and convincing. A very mature junior high reader commented that although the book was a little confusing for him at first, once he got into it, he could not put it down.

In a book talk the speaker can give the background of the two characters and tell how Charles lured David from the camp, pages 9–48.

Neither of the following books is so well written as *Soul Catcher*, but they are unusual and concern kidnappings. The librarian might suggest *The Collector* by John Fowles in which Frederick, a young man whose hobby was collecting butterflies, fell in love with Miranda, a pretty young art student he had been admiring but had not met. He decided to kidnap her and hold her captive until she fell in love with him. The first half of the book is told from his viewpoint and the second part is a diary she kept for three months in which she writes about art, her friends, particularly an older, male artist, and about her hopes for the future. After Miranda died of pneumonia and Frederick had disposed of her body, he singled out yet another girl who might be a better choice for him if he were interested in getting her to fall in love. In *A Child Is Missing* by Charlotte Paul, the son of a man convicted and executed for killing the child of a famous man kidnaps the latter's baby grandson to try to prove that his father could never have killed a small child. The crime almost backfired and almost ends in the death of the second child.

HERSEY, JOHN

A Single Pebble

1956. Knopf.

A young American engineer was assigned to investigate the possibility of building a dam to harness the energy of the Yangtze River. To help determine the dam site he traveled the treacherous river on an ancient junk hauled by human laborers, straining like beasts of burden along century-old paths. He admired the steely, ruthless junk owner and his young wife, Su-long, who nursed the engineer during a sudden illness. Through the legends, poetry, and stories she recited, the young American began to appreciate the tradition and pride of the Chinese people. The head tracker, who directed and encouraged the men hauling the boats over the rapids and through the gorges, was called Old Pebble. His appearance belied his name,

however. The engineer was fascinated by this young, powerful, confident worker whose life goal was to direct the junks through the dangerous waters of the Yangtze. On the other hand, Old Pebble was resentful of the American's intrusion and frightened by his desire to change the river, thereby eliminating the need for the skillful piloting which was the young workman's main talent. Old Pebble's death in a frightening accident affected the American profoundly, and he began to understand that Western technology might not be the only answer to human misery.

The conflict between the old and the new appeals particularly to mature high school boys who enjoyed Hilton's *Lost Horizon.*

The delicacy of the narrative and the dreamlike mingling of old and modern viewpoints, however, are difficult to transmit in a book talk. A brief summary such as given above could attract interested readers. Otherwise introduce this book to individuals.

Jack Chen (I-fan Ch'en), the son of a former foreign minister of China, is an artist and writer. He and his wife lived for a year (1969–1970) in a commune in Honan Province doing manual labor among the farmers to determine how the latter were responding to the beliefs and practices of the Cultural Revolution. In his readable account called *A Year in Upper Felicity* he brings out the differences between the old ways and the new, and introduces the reader to many of the people with whom he had close contact. For those interested in learning how the Chinese Communist Party retrained workers to take over new types of work, recommend Andrew Watson's *Living in China,* a small readable book that is not so personal as Chen's. Watson, who speaks Chinese, taught at Sian Foreign Language Institute for two years (1967–1969) and traveled widely through China, which he revisited in 1971. He describes life in the city and in the country, education, culture, and government organization under the Communists, and contrasts life today with old traditions and customs.

HESSE, HERMANN

Siddhartha

[1922]

Siddhartha, a Brahmin's son, was a handsome, very intelligent, promising lad but he was not happy. He felt there must be something more to life than what he was experiencing. When he finally decided to join the ascetics, it took him all night to get his father's permission. He left home the next day and was joined by his dear friend Govinda. Siddhartha had one desire—to become empty of thirst, desire, dreams, pleasure, and sorrow—to let the Self die. He learned to endure self-denial but though he was able to lose Self for a while, he always came back to it and was again dissatisfied. Having heard about a man called Gotama, the Illustrious, the Buddha, Siddhartha

agreed to go with Govinda to hear the man preach. Govinda became a disciple of Gotama, but Siddhartha decided to go on looking for more than Buddha could offer. As he kept searching, he realized that despite having learned all that teachers had to give him, he still did not know himself. Now he began to see beauty in the world which he had ignored before. One day he met Kamala, a beautiful woman. Inquiring about her, he learned that she was a well-known courtesan. The next day he shaved and took a bath, then went to see her. When he asked her to teach him about love, Kamala told him that if he was to have her, he needed clothes, shoes, and money. To help him acquire these, she arranged an interview for him with a wealthy merchant. This was another turning point in Siddhartha's life. He became wealthy and began to acquire bad habits. He lost the desire to meditate and again grew weary and discontented. Pleasure, covetousness, idleness, and finally gambling possessed him; he became hard and mean in business. At last, miserable and heartsick, he meditated all day and decided to be quit of this life he had lived for so long. He disappeared and was on the point of committing suicide when he heard a word in his mind. It was Om, the beginning and ending of all Brahmin prayers. Before long he found himself an apprentice to Vasudeva, a ferryman. Vasudeva, another name for Krishna, was a very good man who helped Siddhartha to fully experience self-realization. Later Govinda came to the ferry on his way to Gotama's deathbed. He stayed overnight with Siddhartha, who tried to explain the philosophy he had adopted. Govinda understood little of what Siddhartha said but realized that his friend had found peace at last, something he too wished to do.

A knowledge of Indian religions is not necessary for the reader in order to enjoy *Siddhartha*. The author provides enough commentary to explain the terms which he uses. Young people seem to find something worthwhile in this book.

The first chapter tells how Siddhartha obtained his father's permission to become an ascetic and could be used as a book talk.

It may be easier for young people who are trying to find themselves to identify with the main character in *Demian*, another Hesse novel. In it Emil Sinclair reveals some of his innermost thoughts, desires, and dreams as he grows away from his tightly knit family. He becomes confused, is often lonely, and also is disturbed by the attraction of evil. When he desperately needs someone to bolster him, someone seems to be ready to do so. At times it is Max Demian, who is a little older and more mature than Emil; at another time it is Pistorius who guides and helps Emil toward finding his own identity. Another type of philosophy which appeals to many thoughtful young people is to found in *The Prophet* by Kahlil Gibran. When Almustafa, the prophet, is about to leave for the island of his birth, he speaks to the people about such topics as love, marriage, giving, work, joy, sorrow, and freedom to guide them. Each little sermon-

ette is a gem of thoughtfulness, gently reprimanding, tenderly advising, and metrically perfect.

HILLARY, EDMUND

From the Ocean to the Sky

1979. Viking.

For more than five years Edmund Hillary, who with Tensing had been the first to reach the summit of Mount Everest, had dreamed of going with a group of friends by jet boat from the mouth of the Ganges River on the Bay of Bengal upstream to the closest possible approach to the Himalayas. When they could go no further by boat, the men would have to continue on foot to the mountains and select one to climb. All the Indian religions have great regard for the river, but it is especially sacred to the Hindus who call it Mother Ganga. To help pay for the expedition Hillary wanted to make a documentary film and was fortunate that experienced cameramen volunteered to go along. Because Hillary is so highly regarded in India, the Indian government, Air India, the Indian Army, and Indian Oil were very generous in providing men, planes, and other services to help the project, which became known as the Indo-New Zealand Ganga Expedition. The team comprised nineteen men, several of whom were Indians, who contributed services at various times. They started out on August 24, 1977, going by jet boat to the island of Ganga Sagar where a Hindu religious ceremony called "puja" blessed the boats and the journey. Because there are numerous cities, villages, and temples along the banks of the Ganges, the boats had to stop at each. Not only were the expedition members royally entertained and Hillary honored, but the "puja" ceremony was frequently repeated. Coverage by radio and newspaper was excellent. For that reason hundreds of people often waited on the riverbank all day and all night for the group to arrive. Hillary's account describes the daily progress of the expedition. Especially interesting are the methods used to propel the boats through the rapids. The farther up the river they went, the steeper the gradient became until they reached the Nandaprayag Falls, which are ten feet high and strewn with huge boulders. The Indians who had gathered there believed the boats could "fly" up the falls, as they had seemed to do at lesser rapids, but the drivers would not even attempt it. The boats were crated and sent back down the river by truck and the members of the expedition began their trek on foot. Hillary's son Peter and another experienced mountaineer went ahead to take a look at the mountain known as Narayan Parbat and figure out the route by which they would climb to reach its summit. They decided this mountain was much too difficult to climb at that time of the year and selected instead Nar Parbat, a lesser peak. Before any climber was able to reach the summit, Hillary was incapacitated by altitude sickness at 18,000 feet because he had not taken

time enough to become acclimatized. With great difficulty he was carried down to a spot below 16,000 feet where a helicopter could pick him up and take him to a hospital. Because he began to recover before the helicopter arrived, most of the men stayed on the mountain in order to reach the summit and complete the project.

The reader learns a great deal about the people of India, their customs, myths, and religions while thrilling to some of the group's exciting adventures on the river and in the boats. Hillary writes unusually well and makes the whole experience very real to the reader.

The visit to Ganga Sagar for the "puja" will introduce some of the expedition's participants, describe the blessing, and tell of their fight with the surf to reach the island and to leave, pages 18–22. Chapter 3 gives information about the team which can be worked into this book talk. Their experience in Calcutta also could be used because it describes the hordes of people who turned out to welcome the members of the expedition and the hospitality given them, pages 77–80.

In *Kayaks Down the Nile,* John Goddard describes the 4,415-mile voyage he made with two French friends by kayak down the Nile from its source in Lake Victoria to Rosetta, a small port town on the Mediterranean. They had some scary times with angry hippopotamuses, elephants, immense crocodiles, and wild, rocky cataracts. For readers who want to read more of Hillary's books, suggest his *Nothing Venture, Nothing Win.* Raised on a small farm in New Zealand where he had to work hard, long hours, Hillary early sought adventure to enliven a dull life. His love of hazardous enterprise led to a career based on adventurous exploits – climbing mountains, exploring the Antarctic, doing research in the Himalayas, and building schools and a hospital for the Sherpas of Nepal. *Schoolhouse in the Clouds,* another book by Hillary combines mountain climbing and a project to help the Sherpas. When the expedition was planned, Hillary chose climbers among whom were engineers, carpenters, interpreters, doctors, and builders. Schools were built in two villages, a mile-long pipeline to bring water into another village was set up, and unexpectedly an epidemic of smallpox was averted by the expedition's undertaking widespread vaccinations.

HILLERMAN, ANTHONY G.

Listening Woman

1978. Harper.

When Margaret Cigaret, called Listening Woman, came to treat the very ill Hosteen Tso, she sensed he was not telling her all she needed to know in order to cure him. When she questioned him, he said he had promised not to tell anyone about the secret cave and some sacred sand paintings that had been disturbed there. Thinking per-

haps witchcraft might be involved, she walked away from him until she came to a cul-de-sac in the cliff which partially surrounded his hogan; then she sat down and went into a trance so that the voice of the Fourth World might give her advice. When she returned to the hogan, she found Hosteen Tso and the girl who acted as her chauffeur clubbed to death. It wasn't until the next autumn that Joe Leaphorn, a lieutenant in the Navajo Tribal Police, was assigned to that case. The police were positive that the man carrying $500,000 from the robbery in Sante Fe of a Wells Fargo armored truck had gotten away in a helicopter, later seen over the reservation. About this time a man whom Leaphorn had stopped for speeding tried to run him down; later the car was found in the desert not far from Hosteen Tso's hogan. Believing that there might be a connection between these three events and eager to pick up the man who had tried to kill him, Leaphorn followed the car's trail for a time. From his observations he concluded that the man was a Navajo accompanied by a huge, savage dog. When Leaphorn questioned Margaret Cigaret and a white man who had run a trading post on the reservation for many years, each gave him something to ponder. From an FBI agent Leaphorn learned that the FBI had decided that the Buffalo Society was involved in the Sante Fe robbery. Leaphorn knew that the group wanted to avenge in kind the massacres which whites had carried out against Indians many years earlier. On a visit to Hosteen Tso's hogan Leaphorn observed the tracks of a large dog. Knowing well the myths of the Navajo people, he tried to reason out the location of the secret cave and decided it could only be near the hogan in a series of canyons which led to Lake Powell. He made his way down into one of the canyons; his experiences there are well nigh unbelievable. After hours of walking he encountered two men, accompanied by a large dog which attacked him. To escape, he climbed a narrow chimney in the rock where the animal could not reach him. Although the men tried several methods of attack which, if successful, would have killed him, Leaphorn managed to survive. In the morning when he turned on his walkie-talkie, he learned that three men had kidnapped eleven boy scouts and two adult leaders who had been camping at Window Rock. This brought to mind the century-old Olds Prairie murders in which fourteen Indians, three adults and eleven children, had died at the hands of whites. On the way back to where his truck was parked, he was again attacked by the dog and one man. To get away, he lowered himself over the edge of the cap rock and found the back entrance to the cave where the hostages were held. Eventually he rescued all.

Hillerman's novels about Indians are suspenseful and well plotted, with authentic details about beliefs, customs, and locale that add substance to the stories he tells. This book can be recommended to those who like action-packed stories with lifelike characters.

Pages 1–26 have several incidents which may appeal to the book talker.

In *People of Darkness* by Hillerman, law enforcement is in the hands of Jim Chee, a young sergeant for the Navajo Tribal Police. The search for the perpetrator of a theft of keepsakes from the home of a wealthy man gradually uncovers a series of murders, some having been committed thirty years before the story begins. Although really incredible, *Nightwing* by Martin C. Smith can also be suggested as a follow-up. It takes place on Hopi and Navajo land and tells of a white doctor who is searching for the cave from which fly vampire bats infected with bubonic plague.

HOTCHNER, A. E.

King of the Hill

1972. Harper.

During the early days of the Depression Aaron and his parents, Anne and Eric, lived in the Avalon Hotel in St. Louis. The father had been out of work a long time and the family owed a considerable amount of back rent. Often they went without meals because they had no money for food. Aaron's mother sold silk intimate apparel to customers in East St. Louis, so occasionally they did have a little money. A neighbor who came in once a week for dinner did not know that the fifty cents she gave Aaron's mother paid for the whole meal. After dinner Aaron had to go to the neighbor's room to play cards with her. This would earn him a quarter with which he was supposed to see a movie; sometimes he did spend it that way. Most of the tenants who lived on the same floor as Aaron's family were behind in their rent. One by one they were locked out of their rooms, losing what little they had. The family was saddened each time this happened. The author tells about Lester, a young man who befriended Aaron and tried to find different ways for him to earn money. Aaron did not know much about Lester, a young man who seemed able to do almost anything. As the finance company was attempting to repossess the family's car one day, the policeman tricked Aaron into revealing where it was parked. Lester came to the rescue by pushing the Ford out of its parking place and up an incline, so that Aaron could steer it down several streets, getting it far away from the men who were looking for it. When Aaron was graduating from the eighth grade, his mother had to go to a tuberculosis sanatorium, and his father was away looking for work. The boy needed a new outfit, which Lester undertook to get for him by hook or by crook. Because Aaron never wanted people to know how poor his family was, several of his escapades deal with his attempts to keep people from finding out. Although the book begins and ends a family story, Aaron was on his own much of the time and often had to

figure out how to cope with a problem himself. His solution usually was ingenious. He had a vivid imagination and was a voracious reader, so if he was not winning an important imaginary game on the mound for the St. Louis Cardinals, he might be Captain Nemo or D'Artagnan.

Although this book reads like an autobiography, it is really a novel. The reader will find in this story of life during the Depression years much human interest and humor, a combination that appeals to young people.

There are numerous episodes for book talks. Aaron copes with no food in their hotel room by taking his empty lunch box to school and sitting by a series of fat little kids with big lunches, pages 24–26. Lester provides Aaron with soup occasionally by taking the boy into a restaurant; then while ordering something, he puts catsup into hot water for Aaron, page 20. Under Lester's aegis Aaron tries to caddy, but this just did not work, pages 35–41. Aaron befriends Billy Tyzzer, whose family is well off, and finds he cannot continue the friendship because Billy does not know Aaron is poor, pages 49–57 and 109–12. Lester and Aaron save the family's car from the finance company, pages 73–79.

Another Part of the House by Winston Estes is a warm, memorable, family story, also set in the days of the Depression, told by the younger son, a ten-year-old. The father somehow manages to keep the door of his drugstore open even though many of his customers cannot pay their bills. Another entertaining and sometimes touching story of ingenuity and brotherly love about Aaron is *Looking for Miracles* by Hotchner. Upon learning that the job with which he expected to earn money for college was no longer available when he graduated from high school, Aaron boned up on camping and Indian lore in books from the library, then persuaded a camp director to hire him as chief counselor and give his kid brother a camp scholarship. Readers who liked these books could be introduced to *How Green Was My Valley** by Richard Llewellyn, a different kind of story about a boy from a poor family.

HOUSEHOLD, GEOFFREY

Rogue Male

1939. Little, Brown.

The narrator, a well-to-do Englishman and outdoorsman, had been shooting in Poland when he decided to try to get near enough to a dictator to assassinate him. The country is never named, but it might well have been Germany. The hunter was successful in reaching the best spot for the shot, but because he had miscalculated the stupidity of a guard, was caught. While he was being questioned, his hands were mutilated and one eye injured. Later his captors placed him

where it would appear he had fallen to his death. Surviving the fall, he managed to elude the police until he had partially recovered from his severe injuries. Then he found a way to return to England. When he went to see his solicitor, he realized he was being followed. Because of what he had done, he could not let the British government know he was in England. It also was necessary for him to hide himself from the local police as well as from the foreign agents, one of whom he had killed while escaping from London. Because he made several mistakes that brought him to the attention of the police, he had to elude them before he could return to the hideout he had so painstakingly constructed in the side of a hill. However, the foreign agent on his trail was more clever than the police and tracked him down. One night when the Englishman was asleep, that agent and an assistant stopped up the two exits of his hillside den, sealing him in. A long period of negotiation followed, during which the Englishman contrived a weapon and a means of escape that enabled him to kill the agent. The narrator had always maintained that he never intended to assassinate the dictator, but just wanted to find out whether he was a skillful enough tracker to reach the place where he could have killed the dictator, had he wanted to do it. In the end he confessed that the girl he loved had been shot by soldiers of the dictator's country and that he really had intended to be an assassin. In a final letter to his solicitor he confessed that he was going back to shoot the dictator and did not expect to get away this time.

This classic suspense story is easy to read and moves very quickly. It is really a one-character novel, as the other people mentioned are more or less incidental.

The incidents by which the Englishman obtains the necessary clothing and equipment to get away from the area where his accidental death had been staged are told on pages 23–41 and could be worked into a book talk.

Also suggest three other books by the same author. In *Hostage: London* Julian Despard searches for an atomic bomb in the hands of a ruthless organization working for the New Revolution in London and tries to prevent its explosion. In *The Last Two Weeks of Georges Rivas,* Georges Rivas unintentionally becomes so entangled in intrigue, murder, and counterespionage that at the end of two weeks he has to change his name, identity, and place of business. This metamorphosis is eased by the fact that he has also found himself in love and the girl is willing to marry him. Another engrossing story is *Watcher in the Shadows.* After World War II, an attempt is made to kill a man, a Viennese attached to the British Secret Service during the war who had posed as a Nazi functionary in a large German concentration camp. The intended victim led his erstwhile enemy a merry chase, although a dangerous one, before finally cornering him to have it out.

HOUSTON, JAMES

The White Dawn

1971. Harcourt.

Avinga, who tells the story, had been attacked by sled dogs when he was a small child. As a result his legs, which the dogs had mangled, were weak and deformed. A member of a band of Eskimos who lived along the coast of West Baffin Island, he could not lead a normal life and was taken advantage of by his family. Sarkak, his father and chief of the village, ordered two of his other sons and Avinga to take both his dog sleds and open the last stone cache of walrus meat near the entrance to the long fiord up which they always established their summer camp. On their return trip they came across a dead man and the trail of three others who were obviously having difficulty. After taking the meat to camp, Avinga and his brothers were ordered to search for the strangers. They were found, exhausted and frostbitten, and taken to camp where Sarkak took two of them into his igloo. The third one went to Sowniapik's. The rescued men were warmed and fed hot blood soup but communication with them was impossible. The outsiders were much larger than the Eskimos and had bearded faces. One had light blond hair and pale blue eyes and one was obviously a black. Avinga was sent to Sowniapik's igloo to observe and remind that family the man belonged to Sarkak. The chief had a new snow house built beside his own and when all three strangers were recovered, they moved into the new house. This caused trouble in the camp. The black man soon taught the natives to call him Portagee, the blond was called Kakuktak, which means white-haired one, and the third was named Pilee. When their snow houses collapsed in the spring, the people prepared to move to their summer camp to set up sealskin tents. Houston tells of the differences between the customs of the strangers and the Eskimos. Many of the visitors' actions offended their hosts and Eskimo customs seemed very strange to the outsiders. Eskimo families slept together in one bed which was a shelf at the back of the home, opposite the entrance. Men often loaned their wives to visitors for the night, but when Sarkak arranged for Portagee to sleep beside his beautiful young wife, the guest did not know how to handle the situation. The girls in the camp were much attracted to the men and made themselves available. Soon each man had a steady bed partner or two. The author describes a walrus hunt, a seal hunt, a fish trap, and the dances, celebrations, and feasts when members from other villages stopped to visit. The people in Sarkak's camp finally got tired of feeding and providing for the three parasites, who were able to do little in return. One day after these men had refused to do as Sarkak commanded, the villagers got together and made plans to kill them. Although Kangiak, Avinga's brother, tried to save Kakuktak, all three men died. At the end, the whaling ship out of New Bedford,

from which the three strangers had been lost, came again looking for the men. This time a boat was able to reach the shore. Kangiak and Avinga met them but could not understand them; neither did they indicate in any way that the lost men had lived with them. The whalers offered Kangiak a job on the ship and he went with them, leaving Avinga alone.

Houston's descriptions are particularly vivid. Reading this account with its rich detail of the lives of these people and the region in which they lived, a person gains great respect for the Eskimo band, in spite of what some people would consider their loose sexual customs. The book is well written and the characters well drawn. The reader's sympathy is with the Eskimos whose lives were disrupted by the outsiders they rescued.

The introduction of Sarkak and his family and the discovery of the strangers would make a good book talk, pages 3–26. The walrus hunt is an exciting story, pages 122–30.

Farley Mowat's first book on the inland Eskimos, *People of the Deer*, aroused the ire of some people because they did not believe that conditions were as bad for the Eskimos as Mowat claimed. Seven years later he wrote *The Desperate People*, documenting the facts as he presented them. In the late 1890s and early 1900s, the inland Eskimos were a flourishing people with an abundance of food, warm clothing, and adequate homes. In 1912 disease, invaders, and decimated deer herds almost obliterated these Eskimos, whose plight had been ignored for years. Mowat tells of the fate of individuals and what has been done in recent years to improve conditions. Both books can be suggested as follow-ups for *The White Dawn*. Sally Carrighar in *Moonlight at Midday* tells of going to an Alaskan village to study animals. She found she was just as interested in learning about the Eskimos and became very concerned about their survival in modern society. She discusses their very special problems and suggests how these can be handled. Also recommend Houston's novel, *Spirit Wrestler*, published in 1980, to those who want to know about the customs, beliefs, culture, and superstitions of the Eskimos of Baffin Island when times were good. It relates the story of Shoona, abandoned by his widowed mother and adopted by a female shaman, who taught him the secrets of her ancient craft.

HUDSON, WILLIAM

Green Mansions

1916. Dodd, Mead.

A birdlike voice echoed throughout the tropical forest, but the lush foliage concealed the source of the melody, too lilting to be human and yet too cleverly evasive to be birdsong. It was a sound which brought a man back again and again to a secluded part of a Venezue-

lan forest, shunned by superstitious Indians as an evil wood. It was the singing of Rima, a girl more bird than human, which was to haunt the man's dreams forever. Abel, forced to flee for his life from political enemies in Venezuela, had taken refuge in the interior with a tribe of Indians. One day he had come upon a section of forest which resembled a park and there he had heard Rima for the first time. When he finally chanced upon the slim girl with the long dark hair who seemed able to communicate with animals, he realized that it was she whom the tribesmen feared as the evil daughter of Didi. Rima, through an intimate knowledge of her forest companions, saved Abel from the effects of a snake's poison and nursed him back to health in the hut of old Nuflo, her adopted grandfather. After this, Abel realized he loved the girl, but she was more concerned with finding her own unknown people. Willing to do anything for Rima, Abel set out with her and Nuflo to locate her former home. At the conclusion of a long, fruitless journey, the two men returned to find Nuflo's hut destroyed and the girl, who had returned ahead of them, gone. Only a blackened, smoldering tree remained as a memorial to Rima, who had been trapped and sacrificed by the Indians in the flaming pyre. Abel, obsessed by Rima's beauty, eventually realized that only after his own death could he recapture her perfection, but meanwhile he must make himself worthy of her.

The tale is not easy reading but it appeals to mature lovers of fantasy.

A brief description of Abel and his first encounter with Rima might be enough for a book talk to classes, pages 26–43, 53–55, 61. The poetical qualities of the story may make introduction only to individual readers preferable.

Another beautifully written story in which the young man survives the loss of his loved one is *Laughing Boy* by Oliver La Farge. A Northern Navaho lad with a strict Indian upbringing, religious, very sensitive to beauty, intelligent, and perceptive fell in love with an Indian girl with a bad reputation and poor manners. When they were married, Laughing Boy even accepted Slim Girl's deceitful method of building their nest egg. When she was killed by a disgruntled suitor, her husband buried her and everything connected with their life together with great ceremony. The four days of fast and prayer which followed helped him to face his loss and know that they could never be really separated. The unrequited love theme is also encountered in *Cyrano de Bergerac** by Edmond Rostand.

HUGO, VICTOR

Les Miserables

[1862]

Jean Valjean, a convict in the galleys for nineteen years, had just been given his freedom. Unable to find a bed for the night, he applied

to the bishop for a place to sleep and was invited to share the evening meal as well. Before daylight Jean stole the bishop's silver plates and took off. When he was caught and returned to the bishop, he claimed that the prelate had given him the plates. The bishop asked why Jean had not taken the silver candlesticks also. After the gendarmes had gone, the bishop sent Jean on his way with the silver, with the admonition that he expected him to be an honest man in the future. Later a laboring man entered the town of M— —sur M— —, and there became a hero when he rescued two children from a burning house. In a short time the stranger had revolutionized the main industry of the village, becoming a wealthy and important member of the community, known to all as Father Madeleine. When Javert, a new police inspector, was appointed, he felt that he had seen Madeleine somewhere before. Madeleine undertook to help a poor, sick woman of the village recover her child, Cosette, whom she was boarding with an innkeeper, Thenardier, and his family. The Thenardiers were mistreating the little girl and had increased the stipend they charged for her keep. It was not until after the mother had died and Jean, who was Father Madeleine, had been imprisoned again and had escaped that he finally took charge of Cosette, taking her to Paris where he assumed another name. Javert was soon on Jean's trail again; when he cornered the fugitive, Jean escaped over a wall into a convent garden. Fortunately the old gardener was a former friend and secured permission for Jean to help him in the garden, while Cosette became a charity pupil at the convent school. Several years passed before they ventured outside the convent walls. The author now introduces Marius to the reader. For more than a year Marius had observed Cosette and Jean in the park and fell in love with the girl, who also noticed him. When Jean finally realized that the young man was more than casually observing them, he changed their lodging place. Marius was heartbroken. One day he discovered that he could see into the room of the poor family living next door if he stood on a piece of furniture. He heard them making plans to extort a large sum of money from a man who had helped them; this he reported to the police who were interested. The scene which follows is quite exciting and Jean who was their benefactor managed to escape from both the criminals and the police. Later on, when Marius met Cosette again, they acknowledged their love for one another, but it was some time before they could marry.

This is a long, fairly involved story with Jean assuming a number of different names and disguises without the author informing the reader for many pages that he has done so. The book is not especially difficult to read and has several interesting characters and a good deal of action which intrigues both boys and girls.

The exact pages for a book talk will vary with the edition available. Jean Valjean's experience with the bishop and the silver, which occurs very early on, can be easily located and used. Cosette's expe-

rience as a child with the Thenardier family also comes toward the beginning and can be used.

Another story in which a little girl brings happiness to a lonely man is *Silas Marner* by George Eliot. Little Eppie's mother had come to Raveloe to crash the party at the Red House and make the Squire's eldest son publicly acknowledge that she was his wife. Tired from the long walk and under the influence of opium, she lay down in the snow and fell asleep. After a while the little girl whom she carried wakened and wandered off to the light from Silas Marner's house. By the time he had fed and warmed the child, the mother had frozen to death. Silas was allowed to keep the orphan and raise her as his daughter. A young person who appreciates a gentle story with vivid characters will like *The Crime of Sylvestre Bonnard* by Anatole France. When but a young man, Sylvestre heard that Clementine, the very young girl he loved, had married another man. He devoted his life to the study of ancient manuscripts and became a much respected scholar. When Sylvestre was an old man, he was able to befriend Clementine's daughter, Jeanne, who had been left a penniless orphan.

HUXLEY, ALDOUS

Brave New World

1932. Harper.

It all started with Ford and his Model T. Under Ford's influence, mass production and consumer happiness were primary goals; human aspirations shifted from truth and beauty to comfort and security. A new society emerged in which all babies were conceived and nurtured scientifically in bottles under state control. By "decanting" the genetically predetermined embryos at various stages of development, nearly complete control of mental and physical characteristics was possible. Some babies became clever Alphas; others grew into capable Betas, stupid Gammas, and on down the stratification to insensate workers. State nurseries, equipped with hypnotic recordings and staffed by psychological manipulators, turned out individuals conditioned to accept their required places in the social framework with no desire to be imaginative or creative. With stability supreme and dissatisfaction eliminated, comfort and happiness became synonymous. Depression was cured by the happiness drug "soma," and complete freedom of sexual expression from childhood made inhibitions unknown. Birth control was universal, and the mere mention of normal birth, parental love, and family life caused acute embarrassment. For fun, the citizens attended the "feelies"—movies with tactile senses—or took part in exhausting orgies accompanied by artificial music. Ford superseded God, and the devout made the sign of a T as in Model T. Suffering, heroism, and the right to struggle for a cause were abolished. Books mentioning an earlier

way of life were kept in vaults for rare consultation. One citizen, Bernard Marx, was imperfectly conditioned to be an Alpha and experienced annoying dissatisfactions. In order to settle his mind, he and his friend Lenina visited the "uncivilized" area in New Mexico where they were revolted by people living in family groups rather than antiseptic surroundings. One of the natives, John Savage, fell in love with Lenina and returned to London with them, but the cold, sterile, inhuman way of life forced him into a hermit's existence in the country, where he became a tourist attraction. His great anguish and the ridicule of the citizens eventually caused him to commit suicide rather than endure the insensitivity of the totalitarian, comfort-centered society.

Huxley's concern for the encroachment of standardization and scientific control of humanity bursts forth in this shocking and hideously prophetic glimpse of a possible future world. Here is a bitter, satiric challenge to our society. The forceful writing and important implications of the story make it imperative that the librarian read it before suggesting it to mature young adults.

The frank discussion of sexual promiscuity, included not for sensation but to emphasize the dehumanization of the citizens, may make this book inadvisable for book talks in some communities. In others it is possible to use part of the above note and include some of the tour being given to new students by the Director of Hatcheries and Conditioning, as it is described at the beginning of chapter 10.

Huxley looks at the world twenty-seven years after writing the above title and in *Brave New World Revisited* says that he is dismayed by what he sees. The prophecies he made in 1932 have been coming true much, much sooner than he had thought they would. In discussing briefly what is being done to turn people into compliant robots, he covers such topics as overpopulation, overorganization, propaganda, brainwashing, chemical and subconscious persuasion, and hypnopaedia. The librarian is reminded that what Huxley says about marijuana and LSD does not agree with what science has discovered about those drugs since 1958. George Orwell in his *1984* describes the country called Oceania which has a totalitarian government and completely regulates even the thoughts of the people by means of a telescreen installed in each room. Henry Winston who worked at the Ministry of Truth began to think rebellious thoughts and plotted against the government for a while, but he was arrested and put through every degradation that could be devised. In the end he is completely broken so that he can say he loves Big Brother, the symbol of the regime. The librarian might also suggest *Anthem* by Ayn Rand. In a city where the people have no names, only numbers; no choice, only regimentation; no individuality, only solidarity; no freedom, only slavery, a young man—Equality 7-2521 who has rebelled against the status quo—flees for his life and discovers an area where a man can be free to exist for his own sake. In *We* Eugene

Zamiatin describes a utopia called the United State where happiness of the people is the basic purpose of the government and where every facet of life must be so carefully regimented that no freedom, which is incompatible with happiness, remains. The book is not always easy to read but as it is the forerunner of the titles listed above, it will be of interest to some mature readers.

IBSEN, HENRIK

A Doll's House

[1879]

Nora and Torvald Helmer are a young couple very much in love. He calls her "his sweet little lark, his little squirrel, his little featherbrain" and she plays this part to perfection. He does not know that some years earlier when he was desperately ill and his doctor said he must go south in order to regain his health, Nora had forged her father's signature as sponsor for a loan to pay for the trip. She told Torvald that her father who had died at that time had left her the money. Since then she has been secretly scrimping so that she can pay the interest and something on the principal. However, now Torvald has been made president of a bank with an excellent salary and they can foresee a rosier future. The play opens on the day before Christmas, and Nora has a tree and has bought gifts for the children. Presently an old friend, Kristine Lind, comes to see her. Kristine's husband is dead and she needs to find work. Nora agrees to ask Torvald to take Kristine on at the bank. Nora confesses to her friend that she had borrowed twelve hundred dollars for the trip to Italy without her husband's knowledge. She believes that if he were to learn of it, their marriage would be ruined. Later in the day Nils Krogstad, from whom Nora had borrowed the money, comes to see her. He has held a job at the bank, but he knows that Torvald intends to fire him. He threatens to tell Torvald about the loan unless Nora persuades her husband to keep him on at the bank. The next day Nora divulges Krogstad's threat to Kristine, who agrees to talk with him. They had at one time been engaged to be married. Because Krogstad is not home, Kristine leaves a note for him and he comes to see her. She persuades him to give up his plan against Nora and promises to marry him. It is not possible for him to retrieve the letter he had written to Torvald. When the Helmers return home from a party, Torvald fervently declares his deep love for Nora. Then he reads Krogstad's letter and immediately denounces her as unfit to be his wife or to raise the children. By special messenger he receives a note from Krogstad enclosing the IOU and saying that the whole matter must be forgotten. When Torvald does another about face, Nora tells him that she is leaving. She has discovered that she does not love him and no longer wants to be his doll-wife. She realizes that she is ignorant, that she needs education and the ability to make her own

decisions intelligently. She is adamant against his plea and leaves.

Although Ibsen was not a feminist, he did believe that women had a right equal to men's to develop as individuals. Nora says she was a doll-child in her father's house and when she married, she was a doll-wife to Torvald. When her husband reacted so quickly and reversed himself just as quickly, expecting her to accept his decisions just as quickly, she realized that as a person she meant very little to him. She was a pleasant toy to be enjoyed for her beauty and grace only. That position was intolerable and she had no choice but to leave him. Young people will find that there is much food for discussion in this play.

Nora's scene with Krogstad in the first act might be used in a book talk. In it she confesses to the forgery and he demands that she use her influence with her husband to keep him on at the bank. When Krogstad makes his first threat, she shows how little she knows about the law and how immature she is.

Zona Gale, an early defender of a woman's right to independence, rebelled against the male attitude depicted in *The Doll's House*. She also deplored the impossible status of an unmarried woman who, unless she had inherited money, usually had to rely on a male relative for support and was often only an unpaid servant in his home. Her book, *Miss Lulu Bett*, presents such a situation. Lulu had no sense of worth; she was a nonperson and could only be somebody if she acquired a husband. She did not let her only chance escape. *Movers and Shakers* by June Sochen might be suggested to anyone interested in learning what progress has been made by women in raising themselves from the position in which Nora and Lulu found themselves. It took twenty-three years of marriage and slavish devotion to her husband and his views of the proper place for women before Valerie woke up to the rightness of the women's suffrage movement which her mother had espoused so ardently. *A Wondrous Moment Then* by Rowena Farrar is the story not only of Valerie's new role but also of her family and the parts they played during World War I.

JACKSON, BASIL

Flameout

1976. Norton

For eleven years Steven Klein, a former pilot, had been an air accident investigator for the National Transportation Safety Board's Bureau of Aviation Safety. Upon returning from a vacation, he was looking at the Go-Team Catastrophic Accidents lineup when he was notified that a major crash had occurred near Kansas City, killing 406 persons. A plane for Kansas City was waiting to fly the team which consisted of an expert on systems, one on power plants, one on structures, another on human factors, and others on flight opera-

tions, air traffic control, and weather. When the team arrived, the man who headed the Kansas City office of NTSB was already at the crash scene with his team of experts, as were state troopers and local police to keep curiosity seekers and newsmen away from the remains of people and plane. A map at the front of the book shows their placement. Because men from the airline, the engine manufacturers, the FBI, and the Air Line Pilots' Association also were on hand, it was Klein's duty to coordinate all the findings. Jackson has divided the story into sections which indicate the activities of the investigators: investigation, analysis, deduction, simulation, and reenactment. He skillfully keeps the story moving as he explains the work of each person. The investigators were puzzled that the nose cone, which showed evidence of being badly burned inside, had dropped off before the plane hit the ground. Otherwise there was no evidence of fire. Klein believed that something outside the ship itself had caused the crash, but he was unable to get all CA-100 Caravans grounded for a month while he and his staff tried to find the cause of the crash. However, very soon another CA-100 had an all-engine flameout similar to the one on the crashed plane but this crew succeeded in reigniting the engines and made an emergency landing at Albuquerque. Again the nose cone was burned inside. Now all the planes were grounded. Klein got in touch with someone at the Pentagon to check on experimental activities of the Air Force. The crew which had brought their plane in safely flew with Klein in an empty CA-100 on the same route which the two planes had flown. Their experience with flameout and fire makes a breathtaking finale.

An engrossing story in which the mystery is all important and the development of characters is unnecessary. The investigation is very detailed but important. However, this may discourage slower readers. For most young people, this is an exciting and suspenseful read.

A short summary of the first part of the narrative is enough for a book talk.

A minute-by-minute account of the events leading to an avoidable plane crash on September 11, 1974, when an Eastern Airlines flight went down on its approach to the Charlotte, North Carolina, municipal airport is told by William Stockton in *Final Approach*. The author includes much personal information about the passengers. John Fuller tells the true story of an Eastern Airlines L-1011 which crashed in the Florida Everglades, killing 101 persons including the cockpit crew, in *The Ghost of Flight 401*. For some time afterward, the flight engineer and occasionally the chief pilot appeared on other flights and were seen and spoken to by passengers and crew, only to disappear into thin air. *The Last Nine Minutes* by Moira Johnston is not only the story of the crash of a DC-10 that killed 334 passengers and a crew of twelve outside of Paris, but also is an account of the litigation that ensued as families brought suit against the manufacturers of the plane.

JAMES, HENRY

The Portrait of a Lady

[1881]

Ralph Touchett would probably have asked Isabel Archer to marry him, had his health been better. Although he was an American, he had lived in England most of his life because his father had amassed a fortune in the banking business there and the family home was there. Ralph introduced Isabel to a good friend and neighbor, Lord Warburton, who promptly fell in love with her and proposed marriage. Isabel came from an American family of moderate means; she was a student and a dreamer, whose restless mind was trained and ready for whatever future would greet her. She had been carried off to England by her aunt, Mrs. Touchett, Ralph's mother, who for years had lived a strange semiseparated life from her cultured, invalid husband. Now that Isabel had an invitation to travel, she was not willing to settle down; besides, she valued her freedom, even in marriage. Tradition and protocol might well enslave her if she married into the nobility. A well-to-do American friend, Caspar Goodwood, had followed her to England but he had no better luck with his proposal than Warburton. When Ralph saw that Isabel would not accept either young man, he persuaded his father to leave to Isabel a good part of the inheritance intended for him. Upon the elder Mr. Touchett's death a short time later, Isabel became wealthy. Shortly thereafter she and her aunt left for Italy, seeking culture, pleasure, and the best of the world's treasures. Pursued by all her former admirers, Isabel went her own sweet way, always hunting for the best of everything. Isabel had met Madame Merle through Mrs. Touchett and liked her very much. Isabel had no inkling when the three ladies were in Florence that Madame Merle had set a snare for her. That schemer had once been the mistress of Gilbert Osmond, an American who had lived most of his life in Italy. She introduced Isabel and Osmond and encouraged him to pursue Isabel for her money, since he had very little. Her reason for this does not come out until very late in the story. Isabel was trapped—by his surface brilliance—into marrying the self-centered, small-souled, money-hungry Osmond against whom everyone warned her. The change in Isabel began with her marriage, for it was too late before she realized her mistake. Bit by bit she learned the details of Osmond's past life, the reason for her own vast inheritance, and the depth of love each of her two early suitors had had for her. Most of all, she came to appreciate Ralph before he died. Isabel was one who stuck to a bargain no matter how disagreeable it might be, and she returned to Italy after Ralph's funeral to resume her life with Osmond.

This is a psychological character novel of great penetration and a valuable commentary on the foibles of the human race. Older girls find the book romantic and at times very amusing or sad.

A summary of the beginning of the story, including Isabel's refusal

of Lord Warburton, arouses interest, chapters 1 and 2; and Isabel's letter to Warburton in chapters 12 and 13.

Some young people might enjoy reading about a different type of heroine whom James used in *Daisy Miller*. Daisy, the unsophisticated daughter of a wealthy American family, met Frederick Forsyth Winterbourne, a young American living in Geneva, Switzerland, through her nine-year-old brother. Winterbourne became quite interested in Daisy for a time, but her unconventional behavior, although apparently innocent, turned American society abroad against her. Although Winterbourne warned her of the damage she was doing to her reputation, Daisy ignored him because she was enjoying herself. *The Age of Innocence* by Edith Wharton is another novel in which one member of a married couple remained with a spouse even though strongly tempted to leave. In this instance it was the husband who remained, though not of his own accord but because the woman he loved refused to allow him to break up his marriage. Also the strict moral code of the social class to which his family belonged in New York forbade divorce.

JAMES, NAOMI

Alone Around the World

1979. Coward, McCann.

Like many a young person, Naomi could not make up her mind about what she wanted to do with her life. She had done very poorly in school in New Zealand, so she did not really have a good elementary education. She learned to be a hairdresser but found that she did not like the type of woman who used beauty salons. Thinking she might improve her lot, she went to Europe. After spending several years working in England and Austria or bumming her way around Europe on a bicycle, she met Rob James who, according to Chay Blyth, is a very fine seaman and skippers for Blyth in racing and on charters. Rob taught Naomi what she knows about sailing. She liked it and began to think she would like to sail around the world alone. Less than a year after they met, she and Rob were married. Not long afterward Naomi told Rob she would like to circumnavigate the world; he agreed that it was a good idea. Sailing with him on charter voyages she had learned navigation and gained experience in handling sails in good and bad weather. Chay eventually offered to supply the boat; another friend put up the money for fitting it out and preparing it for the voyage. Many companies came through with equipment and supplies; the *Daily Express* became her sponsor. Rob would be skippering the *Great Britain II* for Chay in the Whitbread Round the World Race while she was gone. When Naomi started out, she appeared to be so incompetent that it seemed a wonder she was able even to sail out of the English Channel, let alone around the world. However, as one emergency after another arose,

she managed to cope with each, proving her actions more dependable than her thoughts. One marvels at her ability to repair a broken bilge pump, a broken self-steering rudder, or the fitting for the collapsed shrouds; to raise and lower a good half-dozen kinds of sails, often many times a day; and to correct the faulty operation of a piece of equipment caused by her own incompetent handling of it. Failure of her radio telephone, the loss overboard of her mascot, a knockdown, and the capsizing of the boat did not seem to ruffle her unduly. Although she did run into plenty of bad weather, she actually had very good luck in spite of it. Her voyage around the world took 272 days, with stops only in Cape Town and Port Stanley where major repairs had to be made.

Naomi uses direct narrative combined with quotations from her log to tell her story. She suffered remarkably few drastic events, so her account mostly consists of how she coped from day to day with tasks which tested her endurance. She proclaims herself to be an atheist and makes light of several men, including Chay, who claim to have had their faith in God strengthened by their experiences sailing alone around the world. She insists that it was her faith in herself, her friends, and her background which brought her home safely. Such self-assurance and egotism are remarkable in light of even one of her comments about "using brute strength I didn't know I had" when she tells of being able to handle successfully an emergency at which she had previously failed.

Chapter 3 entitled "Preparations" has some very interesting details which could be worked into a book talk. Excerpts from her log detailing what to do when she encounters really bad storms might be considered, pages 83–86. An example of one event in a storm could be included, pages 92–93.

Because Naomi refers so often to Chay Blyth, the reader may be interested in reading his book, *The Impossible Voyage*, in which he tells of sailing around the world from east to west. The course he took is considered the wrong way because he had to sail against the winds and ocean currents. Nicolette Walker, the first woman to cross the Atlantic alone and nonstop in a small boat, gives an account of her voyage in *When I Put Out to Sea*.

JENKINS, ELIZABETH

Elizabeth the Great

1959. Coward-McCann.

Princess Elizabeth was only three when her mother, Anne Boleyn, was beheaded and only eight when Catherine Howard, another of her father's wives, met the same end, but those events made her realize the power of a king and the uncertainty of marriage. She vowed then that she would never wed. When her father, Henry VIII, died, the succession arranged was Edward, Mary, Elizabeth, and

then a member of Henry's sister Mary's family. For eleven years Elizabeth was surrounded by plots, intrigues, and conspiracies, but she had the good sense to keep clear of all of them and thus, through a very difficult period, managed to keep her head on her shoulders. At twenty-five, with Edward and Mary dead, she ascended the throne. Then began a long contest between Elizabeth and her ministers – they to find a suitable husband for her and she to stall them off without appearing to do so. Tall, slender, and straight, the queen had her father's ability and physical magnetism combined with some of her mother's fascination and a strain of hysteria. When she announced that William Cecil would be her Secretary of State at the first council meeting, the two began a lifelong partnership nourished by mutual aims and respect. They saw the future of England bound up with the Reformation; they deplored the ruinous waste of war; and they agreed that the national credit must be reestablished. Elizabeth had an instinct for diplomacy and finance that amounted to genius. On occasion she could act as ruthlessly as her father, yet she was humane and had a real capacity for gratitude. She gave a steadfast loyalty to her friends, but did not hesitate to dispose of those who threatened her position. Generally speaking, she was a good ruler. Near the end of her life, her health failed, her temper was shorter, and her memory not always good, but her sharp mind did not desert her. Her people had loved her from the first, and as the years passed their love grew to adoration.

Students interested in this dramatic period of history enjoy this frank but excellent biography. The author's aim was to give an interesting personal picture of Elizabeth and for this reason some important events are given small mention while some minor happenings are given in detail. Elizabeth becomes a very real person under Jenkins's skillful pen. The theory that Elizabeth was the paramour of one man or another is discounted by the author for lack of proof.

For a book talk give a short explanation of the marriages of Henry VIII and the resulting heirs to the throne, and then use chapter 3 as an example of the dangers surrounding Elizabeth before she became queen.

In *Kenilworth* by Sir Walter Scott a good picture of Queen ELizabeth's court emerges. Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester, had secretly married the lovely Amy Robsart, but because he was the queen's favorite, he did not dare to let her know he had married another woman. He kept Amy in seclusion while he courted the queen. Amy was too much in love with Leicester and too proud of her new title to stay concealed. Her breakout eventually led to her death but not at Leicester's hands. Whereas Jenkins devotes only a few pages to Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex, Lytton Strachey in *Elizabeth and Essex* has made the popular, handsome young man one of his principal characters. He has also included much information about the politi-

cal careers of Anthony and Frances Bacon and brings out the delicacy of the machinations of wily government officials. His portrait of the great queen is brilliant. There were so many people involved in Elizabeth's court, so many clashes of personalities, so much intrigue, and so many second and third marriages which altered people's loyalties, that only someone deeply interested in this period will enjoy the attractively illustrated book, *All the Queen's Men* by Neville Williams. Although Elizabeth as a child plays a very small part in *The King's Fool* by Margaret Barnes, a young person interested in the history of the period might like to know something about her father, Henry VIII. Will Somers, the king's jester, tells the stories of the king's six wives.

JENKINS, PETER

A Walk Across America

1979. Morrow.

In May 1973, after graduating from Alfred University in New York State, Peter Jenkins was at loose ends. He had married in 1971 but this union had not lasted. Upset by world conditions, the war in Vietnam, the deteriorating environment, strained race relations, the wide use of alcohol and drugs, and sexual promiscuity, Peter could not envision a rosy future in the United States. Perhaps Europe or South America offered some hope. When he mentioned this to an old security guard at school with whom he had been friendly, the man said that his view of America had been too limited for him to make such a judgment. His respect for this man's opinion made Peter decide to see America by walking across it accompanied by his nine-month-old half-Alaskan Malemute, Cooper. He set up a training schedule for them both so that they could take off pounds and harden their bodies. On October 15 they started out with six hundred dollars in traveler's checks and a well-planned pack on Peter's back. If they could make the 475 miles to Washington, D.C., without any problems, Peter thought they could make it all the way to the Pacific. In Washington he signed up with the National Geographic Society for an article and was given a camera and three lenses before heading for West Virginia. Usually the hiker and his canine companion ate at country stores but when Thanksgiving drew near, Peter bought sweet potatoes, cranberries, cheddar cheese, apples, and chestnuts for himself and three pounds of hamburger and some stale bread for Cooper. He actually cooked up a feast that day. As they moved south Peter tells of the interesting people they met. One was an eccentric mountain man who usually kept all strangers off his property, but the recluse made Peter so welcome he stayed for several days and learned much from him.

Near the Georgia border Peter was adopted by a black family and found a job working at a lumber mill. His experiences there are heartwarming. When bootleggers nearby decided Peter was a government agent and contemplated lynching him, the family rallied around with an arsenal and the illicit distillers cooled off. Upon reaching Mobile, Peter found a job as a tree surgeon for the city. One night instead of attending a wild party, he went to a revival he had seen advertised. The speaker was so dynamic and persuasive that Peter accepted Christ. Once Peter reached New Orleans, he had to write his article for the *Geographic*. He contacted a young man he had met at the revival and through him found a room at a seminary. While there he met Barbara Pennell who was working for her master's degree. Although the young people fell in love, she did not see how she could give up her own plans to go with Peter when he continued his walk. A deeply religious experience made her change her mind and they were married.

Peter had started his walk with a sense of bitterness about what the United States and its people appeared to be and for the most part he found out that his preconceived notions were wrong. He had met with friendliness, generosity, respect, and love. He says he had been turned on by the country and its people "in a thousand fantastic ways." Many young people who are cynical about the world might well change their perspective on life for the future by reading this book. Peter is quite frank about the emotions he experienced with Cooper and the people he met.

There are many episodes which can be used in a book talk. Try the time Cooper mixed it up with a porcupine, pages 34–36. Or when the dog defended Peter and his brother Scott from an attack by six brown hounds the size of wolves, pages 100–102.

To those wanting similar stories try *Family Afoot*. Elisabeth Young, the author and mother of the family, tells of four walking trips she took with her husband and their son and daughter in French Canada and in France. On the first, a trip along the Gaspé, Eve was only six years of age but she walked all but the last quarter of a mile, about a hundred miles. On the last trip, Eve celebrated her eighteenth birthday as they walked 504 miles through the Basque area of France. *The High Adventures of Eric Rybak* is an account by Eric of his hike on the Pacific Crest Trail from Canada to Mexico before it was completely mapped. In *The Ultimate Journey*, also by Eric Rybak, he records his experiences walking the Continental Divide Trail from Canada to Mexico. *The American Walk Book* by Jean Craighead George follows the major historic and nature walking trails in the United States, and provides information about their origin, some of the principal sights, and quotations from some of the hikers. The bibliography at the end of each chapter tells where to get maps and additional information.

JONES, TRISTAN

Ice!

1978. Sheed Andrews.

After World War II, Tristan Jones transferred from the Royal Navy to the Royal Hydrographic Service. In 1952 when his survey vessel was blown up by guerrillas, he suffered a severe spinal injury. The doctor told him he would have to avoid future sea-going work but he refused to consider that. As soon as he was able, he looked for work so he could save up and buy his own boat. He found a job sailing yachts made in Holland to their owners overseas. He gathered valuable knowledge and experience during eight transatlantic voyages and a complete circumnavigation of South America and the world. With the money saved, he found the boat he wanted—a thirty-four foot former lifeboat made of West African mahogany on oak that had ample room for a twelve-foot cabin amidships and eight feet to spare for the cockpit—and spent the next five months working hard to make her seaworthy. Then he had his shopping to do for books, charts, navigational tables, food, and warm clothing. Nansen, the explorer, had been one of Tristan's heroes and he wanted, if possible, to sail farther into the Arctic than Nansen had in the *Fram*. When Tristan started for the Arctic, his route took him to the west coast of Ireland. As he sailed north, touching in at the Blasket and Aran Islands and the Hebrides, he tells a bit of their history, mentions the friendly people he met at each stopover, and recounts the history of early voyagers including Saint Brendan, the Gaulish-Celts, Pythias, and the Vikings. Because time was going too fast, he skipped the Faroes and made for Iceland. In a storm on the way he had an accident which injured one eye severely and knocked him out. When he came to and put his hand up to his face, his eye was actually hanging out of its socket. He popped it back in and sewed up the split in his eyebrow with the smallest of his nylon fishlines. When Tristan reached Reykjavik, the doctor at the seamen's hospital told him he had done a good job of repair. He had not lost the sight of the injured eye. After sailing around Iceland he set out for Greenland, but was stopped completely by the ice upon reaching seventy-six degrees, ten minutes. Stranded over a month on an ice floe, Tristan was rescued by a ship and was able to reach Scoresby Sund in Greenland. He went up the fiord past an Eskimo village to a spot where he thought the boat would be safe. There he spent the winter. Near the end of April with his boat back in the water, he decided to try to make for eighty-six degrees north by way of Svalbard. Unfortunately, the ice caught him before he could reach Svalbard and he spent 366 days stuck fast, the last few months on limited rations. Once free of the ice, he just made it to Svalbard because his boat had been so badly damaged. He had lost his desire to go any further north. After recov-

ering a bit from his ordeal and repairing the boat, Tristan sailed south. Perhaps the tropics would be better.

The man's courage is remarkable; his ingenuity, fascinating; his perseverance, amazing; and his philosophy of life, interesting. What he has to say about loneliness and fear on pages 274–75 is well worth reading and pondering. Jones writes very well. His descriptions are vivid and his appreciation of the wonders of the universe are poetically beautiful. However, his language is sometimes crude and profane as he talks about minor everyday experiences. He is also not above "borrowing permanently" from Her Majesty's shipyard, smuggling, and avoiding port regulations.

A book talk can include the attack by the polar bear when he was stuck in the ice near Greenland, pages 187–90.

Thor Heyerdahl's voyages were not made in conventional-type boats nor did he make them by himself, but his experiences too have been unique and often exciting. *The Ra Expeditions*, while not so well known as *Kon-Tiki*, could be suggested to those who liked *Ice*. Heyerdahl and his crew made this voyage across the Atlantic in a reed boat to prove that the Egyptians might have been able to make such a journey. Also recommend *The Brendan Voyage** by Tom Severin. It was in 1929 that Rockwell Kent and two other young men sailing to Greenland in a thirty-three-foot boat were wrecked by a gale on a lonely fiord and had to be rescued by Eskimos and Danes. Kent tells their story and illustrates it with his very distinctive drawings in *N by E*. Sloan Wilson, in his novel *Ice Brothers* that takes place early in World War II, tells the story of Paul Schuman, twenty-two-years old, and Nathan Greenberg, a few years older. Both were the inexperienced officers sent to Greenland on the *Arluk*, an American trawler under the command of the old ice pilot, Captain Mowery, to try to destroy German weather stations and supply depots rumored to be operating on the east coast. Jack Denton Scott was offered a chance to go to a hidden lake behind the Great Wall of China Glacier on an island in the Svalbard group, north of Norway and not far from the North Pole. He describes the somewhat complicated voyage and the unusual sights he saw and experiences he had in *Journey into Silence*.

JONES, TRISTAN

The Incredible Voyage

1977. Sheed Andrews.

In 1969 Tristan Jones sailed from Westport, Connecticut, aboard a thirty-eight-foot yawl, *Barbara*, determined to set the vertical sailing record of the world by going from the Dead Sea at 1,250 feet below sea level to Lake Titicaca at 12,580 feet above sea level. The weather and the situation in the Middle East made him postpone his voyage on the Dead Sea until 1970. Eventually, with the help of the Israeli

Navy, the *Barbara* was hauled overland to the Dead Sea, but the Israeli government would not allow her to be launched. Tristan substituted a short passage on a small sailing craft on the sea before the tractor and trailer took off for Eilat on the Gulf of Aquaba from which he continued his expedition. He knew the voyage to Mombasa in Kenya would be hazardous with contrary winds and current and very possibly hostile Arabs and Africans; tempests added to these difficulties. He planned to sail across the Pacific to Callao but the mail awaiting him from Peru changed his mind. The *Barbara* was too big to take the road from Callao to Lake Titicaca, but he could sail up the Amazon to Pucallpa and from there the boat could be hauled to the lake. He reached the mouth of the Amazon by February 11, 1973, happy in the belief that the voyage was almost at an end. How wrong he was! After moving 1,400 miles up the Amazon under incredibly awful conditions, he had to give up and head downriver before the flood waters which he had been trying to beat overtook him. Tristan knew he needed a small boat to reach the lake from Callao; so he bought the *Sea Dart* in the Caribbean and headed for the west coast of South America, exploring as he went. In Callao he was told it would take six months to get the necessary permits with the help of endless small bribes to Peruvian bureaucrats before he could leave the city. But in a bar he met Salomon, whom he describes as the drunken, vulgar, dirty, rough owner of a 1954 Ford truck. Tristan's new acquaintance offered to take the *Sea Dart* to Lake Titicaca for $150, and a brother-in-law of his in the port authority facilitated their departure. The account of the trip across the Andes is unforgettable because it was so improbable. However, on New Year's morning in 1974 the *Sea Dart* was launched at the lake. As he left the harbor, Tristan was unaware that he was entering a world of superstition, fear, and black magic in which he would spend the next eight months. In one of the Indian groups he visited, he met Huanapaco, who had had some basic education and spoke Spanish slowly but clearly. Tristan invited this Indian to sail with him and he proved invaluable. From Bolivia Tristan decided to ship the boat across the country to the Brazilian frontier where he could head downstream on the River Paraguay. His account of that voyage on which for many miles they had to pull the boat is also incredible but true.

Jones writes extremely well, often poetically and earned his way during the voyage by writing articles for magazines in numerous countries. This comes as a surprise when for the first time he lapses into obscenity, a practice he engages in throughout this account. He appeared to drink vast amounts of alcoholic beverages in port and was an enthusiastic patron of bordellos, although he does not detail these bouts. On the other hand the reader has to admire Jones for his tenacity; his courage; his perseverance; his appreciation of the good in people, no matter what their color; his fairness; his intolerance for bureaucracy and racial prejudice; and his sense of humor. This truly

remarkable story of adventure is enriched with details of history and with descriptions of places, people, and customs.

There are a number of episodes suitable for a book talk: Tristan met Commander Berenson of the Israeli Navy who helped him get to the Dead Sea, pages 10–14; Tristan describes to Conrad, whom he picked up in Malta, what lay ahead on the way to Mombasa, pages 21–23; his experience in Massawa, pages 42–45; Tristan faces up to authorities in South Africa, pages 93–95; his visit to Gorgona, a miserable island prison off the coast of South America, pages 188–92; the trip over the Andes, pages 213–21.

See *The Brendan Voyage** by Timothy Severin and *Ice** by Jones for other titles about unusual voyages.

KANE, HARNETT

Miracle in the Mountains

1956. Doubleday.

"Not to be ministered unto, but to minister" were the words upon which Martha Berry based her rich life. Born into a well-to-do plantation family, she might have enjoyed the pleasures of a Southern belle and been a leader in society; instead she chose to improve the lot of the mountain people of Georgia. It started on a Sunday afternoon when she was reading in a little log cabin near her home. Three grimy little boys watched her from the window. At first they were too shy to talk, but finally they were persuaded to tell where they had come from – Trapp Holler and Possum Trot. They did not go to school or Sunday school because neither were available. Soon she was holding them spellbound with stories from the Bible, and as the weeks passed, their friends and relatives joined the circle. These people needed to learn to read and write. Thus began Martha Berry's log-cabin school. Out of it grew one of the most unique educational institutions in America. Its campus has over 30,000 acres of woods, fields, mountains, and lakes. Many of the buildings have been put up by the boys themselves, and they have constructed much of the furniture, in addition to carrying an academic program. The girls have learned homemaking, cooking, sewing, and weaving, and have helped to keep the buildings in order. Much of the food used at the school has been raised by Berry students. Martha Berry, small and pretty, was determined to provide a richer life for the Southern highlanders. For almost six decades she tirelessly traveled around the country, making friends for the Berry schools and securing financial aid. She was supported in her beliefs and in her work by many who were wealthy and influential, among them Andrew Carnegie, who offered $25,000 if she could raise an equal amount; President Theodore Roosevelt, who infected others with his enthusiasm for the school; and Mr. and Mrs. Henry Ford who gave generously of their money, interest, and ideas to further the program. At one time a

middle-aged couple gave a chapel in memory of their son who had died during his school years. The plans were made to finish it by spring and dedicate it. One day Miss Berry received a letter that the donors would be at the school in the fall for the dedication. Only Martha could imagine the chapel could be finished six months early. When she insisted, it was completed by the boys who worked almost night and day. No matter how hard they had to work, the boys and girls who graduated from Berry were devoted to the school and to Martha, and the training they received brought many of them public recognition as the years passed. Eventually Martha Berry was honored by institutions of higher learning and organizations here and abroad.

Any girl interested in social work or teaching enjoys this book which portrays a woman dedicated to helping people to help themselves and accepting only the best efforts of each. By her example Martha Berry encouraged her staff and students to attempt the impossible and succeed. Warmth, humor, and understanding abound in this biography.

Almost every chapter has tellable incidents and anecdotes. Martha's first experience in having the boys work for their expenses and her first students, pages 60–67; her meetings with Andrew Carnegie, pages 99–109; an account of one of her prize students, Eugene Gunby, pages 158–64; and finishing the chapel six months early, pages 192–95 are suggested.

For forty-five years Leonard Covello worked as a teacher, adviser, and principal with boys in the poorest sections of New York City. He proved that through affection and guidance wild, rebellious boys could be turned into useful and productive citizens. He and Guido D'Agostino collaborated in telling of his experiences in *The Heart Is the Teacher.* Jesse Stuart was another successful teacher who inspired his students to do better work in school, because he was inspired himself and was willing to dedicate himself to his teaching job. He began his career in a country school at the age of sixteen in order to accumulate enough money to attend college. In *The Thread That Runs So True* he relates some of his experiences. The librarian can also recommend *Good Morning, Miss Dove* by Frances Patton. Miss Dove, who had taught in a school at Liberty Hill for thirty-five years, had been a stern disciplinarian and was considered rather old-fashioned. But when she was stricken one day in the classroom, people came to realize how much she had meant in their lives. In *Chalk Dust on My Shoulder* Charles G. Rousculp does not write only of the young people who have been in his classes and how he helped them with problems, but of how they have influenced him. It is probably this part of the book that will most interest and inspire the reader who is thinking of teaching as a career. The author has also included a chapter here and there about his views on related topics: the firing of a good teacher because of gossip about her, his

belief in God, the problems inherent in accelerated classes, the bookstore he operated to supplement his teacher's salary, racial prejudice, and the need for teachers' unions. *Goodbye, Mr. Chips* by James Hilton can also be suggested. Mr. Chipping, who had taught three generations of boys at Brookfield, recalls his experiences at the school with the boys he thought of as his.

KLUEGER, RUTH, AND MANN, PEGGY

The Last Escape

1973. Doubleday.

At age twenty-five Ruth Klueger went from Palestine to Rumania to work for the Jewish organization Mossad le Aliyah Bet. Kadmon, her superior, was unhappy when he first saw her because she was beautiful and had red hair, rather than being mousy and inconspicuous. He soon found out that her good appearance was a great advantage. The Mossad at the time was smuggling Jews out of Europe and into Palestine. The British were severely limiting the number of Jews allowed to enter the Holy Land. In July 1938 thirty-two nations had met in Évian to discuss the Jews of Germany and Austria but no country, not even the United States, which had called the conference, would admit them. It was imperative to evacuate groups of trained, European young people who were desperately needed in Palestine as well as older Jews. No ship owner could risk his ship for an illegal cargo unless he collected an unusually large compensation. Because the Mossad had very little money, Ruth was given the job of raising funds; at this she was quite successful. Large bribes had to be paid to everyone who assisted in getting the Jews out of a country and in transporting them to a seaport and secretly onto a ship which had been converted from a cargo carrier. The authors tell of the problems of getting the *Tiger Hill* ready. Shortly before it was to sail, Premier Calinescu forbade any ship carrying illegal emigrants to leave Rumanian ports. Ruth's only hope was to appeal to King Carol to set aside the ruling long enough to let the ship leave. The way she managed to reach him and present her case is truly amazing. When Ruth talked with a wealthy Jew in Bucharest, she always warned him of the danger to him and his family and advised him to leave the country, though none did because they felt safe. She went to Czernowitz and pleaded with her family to leave but they could not be persuaded. The authors keep the reader informed about events in Europe. Germany attacked Poland and after great destruction and desperate fighting Poland had to surrender. England declared war on Germany. Germany invaded Denmark, Norway, Belgium, Luxembourg, and Holland. Refugees poured into Bucharest. Meanwhile Ruth was working on another ship for illegal emigrants. Some of the passengers were aboard the *Hilda* but the others were held up in Bulgaria because they had no exit visas. By car, ferry, and sleigh

Ruth got to Balchik where the ship was frozen in the ice, a most unusual event for that area. People on the ship were in revolt, food and water were gone, many were ill, and conditions aboard were unimaginable. The ways in which she handled every problem were little short of miraculous. As she had warned, war came to Rumania but not before Russia and Germany sliced up the country. Rumania got rid of King Carol and when a new Premier restored to power the fanatical, anti-Semitic Iron Guards, Ruth was forced to flee the country. Her love for Stefan Meta runs throughout the book. He had been a friend of her oldest brother and she had fantasized about him for years. Although they met in Bucharest and admitted their love for one another, Ruth refused to share his bed. She knew if she once gave in, she could never give her full attention and strength to her work.

This is a long, suspenseful book filled with a great many details about every step of Ruth's work. The constant tension with no time for sleep or proper food eventually wore her down and she collapsed, only to get back on her feet and resume her duties before she had had time to convalesce. Ruth knew what it was like to be in a war-torn country and recalls the dreadful experiences she had as a three-year-old child during World War I.

The manner in which Ruth forced her first meeting with Mandel, a wealthy Bucharest Jew, makes a good book talk, pages 39–55.

Also suggest *Exodus* by Leon Uris. Most of this novel takes place in or near Palestine and describes some of the new Israelis and their experiences before coming to Palestine and after arriving there. With the recognition of Israel as an independent state and the withdrawal of the British, the new country was fighting for its life since the Arabs had no intention of allowing the Jews to take over permanently. Ruth Klueger in her account comments several times that when people fled from invaded countries, there were only a few Jews, comparatively speaking, among them, because many Jews just submitted to the terrorist tactics of the Germans. John Hersey in *The Wall* shows that as the Jews confined behind the wall in the Warsaw Ghetto were being systematically exterminated, there grew in one memorable group the spirit of resistance, the will to live, and a deep loyalty to one another. This determination made it possible for some of them to escape.

KNOWLES, JOHN

A Separate Peace

1959. Macmillan.

In the summer of 1942, before Gene Forrester became a junior at Devon School in New Hampshire, he and his roommate Phineas went with a group of boys down to the river at the edge of the campus. The senior boys were accustomed to climbing a tree on the

river bank, taking a prodigious jump, and landing far enough out into the water to avoid injury. Phineas was the best athlete in school and the first of the summer school group to make the jump; Gene reluctantly followed him. Later the two boys formed the Super Suicide Society of the Summer Session which met every night and initiated new members. They opened every meeting by jumping from the tree into the water. Gene was aiming to be valedictorian of his class and Finny made him flunk a test for the first time in his life by dragging him off to the beach, which was off limits. Since Phineas had won many honors in sports, Gene wondered if his roommate was trying to spoil his chances of winning scholastic honors because he was jealous. Shortly after this Phineas suggested they try a double jump from the tree. Finny was farther out on the limb while Gene was against the trunk. Then Gene deliberately jounced the limb and Phineas fell to the ground below, shattering a leg. He was finished with sports, which made Gene feel so guilty he cried. When he went to see Phineas, he discovered that his friend did not seem to know he had deliberately caused him to fall. When Gene tried to tell him this, the school doctor came in, and Gene had to leave. After summer vacation Gene stopped to see Phineas at his home in Boston and confessed, but his friend refused to believe him. The day Gene returned to school for the fall term, nothing seemed right and he considered enlisting; but when he went to his room that night, Phineas was there. Peace had returned to the campus. One day Gene learned that Phineas was embittered by his injury when he told Gene he had been aiming for the Olympics. Finny wanted nothing to do with the war; in fact he tried to convince Gene that there really was no war going on, so completely devoted was he to peace. That winter Gene made Phineas study and Phineas made Gene build up his athletic capabilities. Gene decided that peace was indivisible and that the war could find no reflection inside him. One night four boys came to their room and took them over to the Assembly Room on the second floor of the First Building where ten members of the senior class were waiting. There the two boys were told that Finny's accident was going to be investigated and both were asked many questions. Suddenly Phineas could stand it no longer and walked out of the room. In a few minutes they heard him fall down the stairs. His leg was broken again, but the break was clean and the doctor was not concerned about it. When Gene went to see Phineas, he learned that his friend had accepted the fact that he, Gene, had deliberately made him fall and tried to explain it away by saying Gene had done it by blind impulse. That afternoon when the doctor began to set the leg, Phineas died.

Knowles has created an unforgettable character in Phineas. He was a fine athlete, possessed ingenuity, a great imagination, and an outstanding personality. Gene often wondered about his friend—was he genuine or only pretending? The reader wonders also. Some

people have read into the book a homosexual relationship between the two boys, but this seems very far from the truth, when one considers their personalities.

One of Finny's inventions will interest young people in this book: blitzball in chapter 3 or Winter Carnival in chapter 9.

Another novel about the friendship of two senior boys at a private school is *Good Times/Bad Times* by James Kirkwood. Franklyn Hoyt, the headmaster, was a homosexual who accused the two boys of so being. Peter protested their innocence of wrongdoing and some reviewers of the book believe him. When Peter leaves the school, he has a bad experience with Hoyt when the man catches him. The boy escapes but when Hoyt corners him, Peter strikes out and accidently kills the man. One of the best stories of the friendship between two boys is *Reunion* by Fred Uhlman. In 1932 Hans Schwarz, son of a Jewish doctor, and Konradin von Hohenfels, son of an illustrious noble family, became fast friends. Konradin's mother hated Jews and the boy had to fight for every minute he spent with Hans. When anti-semitism entered their school, Hans was sent to relatives in the United States. Thirty years passed before Hans heard what had happened to Konradin during World War II. He felt that his friend had lived up to his idealized concept of friendship.

LA BASTILLE, ANNE

Assignment: Wildlife

1980. Dutton.

While Anne La Bastille was spending a short vacation in Guatemala, she became interested in the giant pied-billed grebe, a rare bird found only on Lake Atitlán. This was not surprising because she had taken graduate classes in wildlife management at Colorado State. She decided to write and illustrate an article about the birds to pay her expenses for a month or two. Collecting information and photographs for the article led to an intensive study of the birds, the establishment of a wildlife refuge for them, and her decision to go back to Cornell University for a Ph.D. in wildlife ecology, using her work with the grebes for her thesis. After teaching for a couple of years she decided to free-lance and act as an ecological consultant and writer-photographer. Her first assignment was in Panama where she conducted an ecological survey of its first national park, Volcano Burú. As was often to be the case in the future, she was the only woman in the group of planners. Anne was accustomed to sleeping bags and tents, so the lack of modern accommodations did not bother her. On each of her expeditions she describes her companions, her work, the area, her recommendations, and the reasons for them. Her next big consulting job was in the Dominican Republic. Gulf & Western Industries, Inc., proposed a park consisting of an almost uninhabited island and peninsula in the southwestern corner

of the republic. No money was spared in providing transportation for the scientists and consultants by helicopter and boat. On their last day, when they were to meet the industrial head of the project, Anne discovered she was the only one of the planners able to speak Spanish. As a result, she was asked to return for further work and to explain the master plan to government officials and key people at Gulf & Western. When she had done that, she was invited to do an in-depth survey, help to lay out the road, pinpoint visitors' centers, and anything else that was needed. Anne decided it was important to attend conferences. She not only learned a lot but also she met some interesting people and made useful contacts. She has included accounts of these in her story. She fell and broke her pelvis while taking photographs for a *National Geographic* article and it looked as though she would not be able to attend the meeting of the World Wildlife Fund International in Switzerland where she was to be awarded the 1974 Gold Medal for Conservationist of the Year. Her doctor permitted her to go, provided she promised to stay in her wheelchair. She tells also about visiting a new national park in Peru, of a trip down the Amazon when she acted as staff ecologist on the MS *Lindblad Explorer*'s natural history cruise, and of the on-site research she did for an article for *Audubon* magazine on the ecological situation in the Amazon area. Ecologists are worried that the Amazon region will become a desert because of the manner in which it is being misused.

Anne La Bastille writes very well, yet she is informal in her presentation. She is obviously enthusiastic about her work and labors hard at it. She makes friends easily, which has been an advantage when she has had to work closely with native guides in a number of Central American countries. She could easily be an inspiration to any teenager who is interested in a career in the out-of-doors.

Any one of La Bastille's assignments is suitable for a book talk. She did several short ones while she was working for her Ph.D. In one very short, amusing episode, she tells about a park planner who came from Washington, D.C., to observe for a day. Anne had just climbed down from a visit to the top of an old lighthouse, a difficult feat, when he arrived by helicopter. A poorer park planner is hard to imagine, pages 152–54.

Anne has also written *Woodswoman* in which she tells of her life at and the wildlife around her headquarters, a log cabin she built herself on twenty-two acres of virgin forest on Black Bear Lake in the Adirondacks. She is a mile and a half by boat or snowshoe from her pickup truck; she is without a telephone; and she loves it. Although Sally Carrighar does not have a Ph.D. in any branch of ecology, she is a well-known naturalist, greatly concerned with ecology. She has written several books about her studies, among them *One Day at Beetle Rock* in which she recounts the activities, confrontations, peculiarities, and vigilance of nine animals and birds observed dur-

ing one day at a site in the high Sierra Nevada Mountains. In *One Day at Teton Marsh* she describes, often in poetic prose, the events in the lives of fourteen wild creatures ranging in size from a mosquito to a moose during one fall day in a valley in Wyoming.

LAWRENCE, R. D.

The North Runner

1979. Holt.

In 1955 when Lawrence was living on a two-hundred-acre homestead north of Winnipeg, he bought a part-wolf, part-dog team leader from an Ojibway Indian for twenty dollars. With a club in one hand and a short, tight chain on the dog's collar in the other, the Indian escorted the animal to the shed indicated by the buyer. Unwilling to own a vicious dog, Lawrence tried at once to establish friendship between the new arrival and himself by giving the dog a good meal and two big marrow bones. That night after supper he took a thermos of coffee, some oatmeal cookies, a kerosene barn lantern, and his sleeping bag and joined the dog in the shed. He settled down just out of the animal's reach, talking to it quietly as he had done earlier, and went to sleep after sharing the cookies. The next day after deciding to name the dog Yukon, he took Sussie, his collie bitch, with him to visit the shed. Sussie, being well trained and affectionate, soon demonstrated her love for her owner, her obedience, and her friendliness toward Yukon. From that time on, the big dog and Lawrence were the best of friends. Although Lawrence kept the animal on a leash when they went tramping in the woods, he needed no club to control him. When the dog was free of parasites inside and out and his gaunt body had filled out, Yukon was a handsome, very large, strong dog, able to carry a forty-pound pack on his back and eager to help Lawrence in his many activities, which included running a trapline, keeping his household supplied with meat, and cutting fifty cords of spruce pulpwood for a mill. Lawrence decided to quit trapping even though that occupation helped earn his living, because it seemed to him to be a morally wrong activity for him. To compensate for the loss of income, he bought a horse to help him in his logging operations. But the next summer his horse was killed when a tornado touched down in his clearing. The following winter when the mill cut back its production and he lost his contract, Lawrence realized he could not continue to live in the backwoods. He accepted a job as city editor of a newspaper in a small British Columbia town, found a good home for three of his dogs, closed up his homestead, and with Yukon drove west. He stayed on his job only long enough to accumulate funds for a year in the wilderness in the northwest part of that province. Next he went to Winnipeg to work. There he fell in love with a young woman who worked for the same newspaper, someone who knew nothing about

life in the wilderness. It was obvious that he could not share his life with both Joan and Yukon. Unwilling to give up either one, he took a short vacation, returning with Yukon to the homestead, where the dog solved the problem for him.

Lawrence writes very well, describing events, weather, animals, plants, birds, and scenes graphically. He has selected his episodes carefully, delineating them with restraint and imparting a great deal of pertinent information without being pedantic. He is able to catch the reader's interest with the first sentence and maintain it to the end. Any young person with a fondness for the out-of-doors or for dogs will be intrigued by this true story.

For a book talk choose one of the following. Yukon saved his master from an attack by a frenzied moose, pages 42–45; when Lawrence introduced Yukon to the rest of the dog team, the new arrival immediately asserted his leadership, pages 54–60; lost in a blizzard, Lawrence finally let Yukon go the way he wanted to go and he took them home, pages 105–19.

Also suggest some of the following books. In a newer, very informative book, *Secret Go the Wolves*, Lawrence tells of adopting two seven-day-old wolf cubs, raising them with the help of his wife Joan until they not only could support themselves in the wilderness but also were willing to remain in wild country. *In the Shadow of a Rainbow*, a remarkable story by Robert Leslie, a young Indian makes friends with the magnificent bitch that was leading a wolf pack. In *Never Cry Wolf* Farley Mowat observes a pack of wolves and writes of their hierarchy, the training of the cubs, and the habits of the adults. A reader deeply interested in wolves will be fascinated by *Of Wolves and Men* by Barry Lopez, who writes about the animals from the viewpoints of the scientist, the Eskimo, the Indian, the wolf killer, and mythology and folklore. Hope Ryden in *God's Dog* spent many hours observing a pack of coyotes and describes their lives in the wild. She also discusses the incredibly cruel means used to kill unwanted wild animals.

LE GUIN, URSULA

The Dispossessed

1974. Harper.

Urras was a world somewhat similar to Earth. Seven generations before this story begins, the Council of World Governments had allowed a group of rebels under the leadership of Odo to leave Urras and go to its moon, Anarres, to live. The new land was inhospitable; much of it was dry, barren, and windy, but it was rich in minerals. By the time Shevek, the main character in this book, was eighteen, there were communities scattered all over Anarres. Their buildings were utilitarian, suited to the climate and the frequency of earthquakes. The planet had no government; custom and the sense of

cooperation regulated the lives of the citizens except for production, which was administered by a network. Every tenth day everyone engaged in some volunteer work, often manual labor, for the good of the community. There was little home life. Children were put in learning centers, adults ate in cafeterias, couples were assigned to a room with a bed but no other furniture. There were single rooms for couples who wished to copulate. Women and men were more or less equal and there were famous women scientists as well as men. Shevek was a brilliant student majoring in physics. A senior member of the Abbenay Institute in physics sent some of Shevek's work to Professor Atro on Urras which was more advanced in the sciences because the government there supported research and education. It was through Atro that Shevek's first work was published when he was twenty. Four years later he met Takver whom he had seen briefly years earlier. In a few days they decided they wanted to make their relationship permanent. By the time Shevek was twenty-nine he received the Seo Oen award for another publication, *The Principles of Simultanity*. When he was thirty-eight, he was invited to come to A-Io on Urras where he was the guest of the University of Ien Eun. His hosts showed him villages, farms, cities, museums, high courts of law, government buildings and government in action, laboratories, and factories. Much that he saw was elaborate, colorful, and luxurious. He wondered if there were no poor people. Although he enjoyed the classes he taught, he was unable to make progress with his own work on the General Temporal Theory. A colleague from another country warned Shevek that his work was the reason why he was in A-Io. His theory was needed for their space flight program and their prestige. He continued his work but did not write anything down where others might find it. One day Shevek turned to his servant to find out how to reach the poor people of A-Io and upon going into their area, he became involved in an uprising which was quickly put down. This turned the government and the academic world against him. He managed to reach the embassy of Terra and talk with the representative from Earth. He offered to give her the theory he had completed if she would have it broadcast to physicists all over the world. Then he asked her help in getting him back to Anarres and she agreed. At the end he returned to his own planet, knowing that some people there considered him a dissident.

LeGuin writes very well but her arrangement of this book is confusing at first. The first chapter has Shevek on his way to Urras, the second has him a baby in the nursery on Annares. The chapters alternate in time like this throughout the book. In the next to last chapter, he is returning home. The story and characters are intriguing and the social systems of the two planets are thought provoking. Copulation is acceptable whether between opposite sexes or the same sex. Some couples marry; others come together as permanent partners as Shevek and Takver did.

A book talk could include a brief description of life on Anarres and then give Shevek's reaction to the furnishings of the room assigned him on the *Mindful* on the way to Urras and at the suite he had at the University of Ien Eun, chapters 1 and 3.

The Left Hand of Darkness by LeGuin can also be suggested although it is not so easy to read. It is concerned with the adventures of Genli Ai who was sent to Gethen to arrange an alliance between that planet and Ekumen, the coordinator of trade and knowledge for eighty-three habitable planets. It is conceivable that a young person who admires LeGuin's writing might be willing to read something of hers that is not science fiction. *Orsinian Tales* is a group of very well written short stories, a number of which take place in Krasnoy, an imaginary country, not unlike Russia. She makes use of three themes: the need for love, the desire for personal freedom, and the evils of governmental tyranny and persecution. In *The Humanoids* by Jack Williamson, 10,000 years had passed since Hiroshima and atomic-powered ships had carried man to many thousand habitable planets. But humans were still killing each other until humanoids were invented. These robots were programmed to serve man and to keep him from making war. Dr. Clay Forrester, a rhodomagnetic engineer, refused to trust humanoids as he felt they deprived man of freedom. This story tells how he tried to defeat or destroy them.

LINDBERGH, ANNE MORROW

Bring Me a Unicorn

1972. Harcourt.

Anne Morrow Lindbergh decided to write her autobiography because she had lived such an extraordinary life in spite of the fact that she considered herself to be just an ordinary person. This first volume is made up of letters written mostly to her sisters, Elisabeth and Constance, and to her mother, along with excerpts from her diary. She enrolled at Smith College in 1924, and writes of friends, classes, instructors, outings, and her thoughts, problems, and emotions. Reading was important in the Morrow family, and Anne often comments on and quotes from books, authors, and poetry. During the summer of 1926 the family traveled in Europe. Because her father held an important position, the family was able to attend the League of Nations meeting in Geneva. There Anne was included in her parents' invitation to a luncheon for some of the diplomats given by the daughter of J. P. Morgan. At this time she was introduced to Paderewsky, the famous pianist, who had been Poland's Prime Minister from 1919 to 1921. Anne's best work at college was done in creative writing. This is reflected in her careful use of words that shows even in her diary. She decided she would like to have a career in writing but was afraid she was not good enough. During Anne's senior year at Smith, her father was appointed Ambassador to Mex-

ico, where her parents and younger sister went to live. That Christmas Anne and Elisabeth joined the family in Mexico City. Colonel Lindbergh, who had made his transatlantic flight, had been invited to Mexico by that country's president; there he and his mother were guests at the United States Embassy. Anne was so quiet and shy she felt she made no impression on him, but Elisabeth talked with him so easily Anne was jealous of her. When the Colonel took the sisters on a flight over the area, they were thrilled. Afterwards he left on a flying mission to Central and South America. Anne never expected to see him again. In the spring before she graduated she won two prizes for writing which she felt were undeserved. After graduation she went home to Englewood. The rest of the family was away when Colonel Lindbergh called to speak to her parents or Elisabeth. Finding them not at home, he asked for Anne. Having promised to take the girls flying again, now he invited Anne. She had been very shy and afraid when she talked with him on the telephone, yet when they were together, she found she could talk with him easily and they enjoyed one another's company. After that she saw him several times. The next Christmas he again came to Mexico and Anne spent two weeks in his company. She had had definite ideas about the kind of man she wanted to marry; she and he must have many things in common. She was unable to say just how her engagement to Charles Lindbergh came about when they were so different from one another but as the book closes they are to be married.

The Morrows were a very closely knit family and girls especially will enjoy their letters to one another. They all loved to read and Anne's comments on books will challenge some young people. This autobiography will appeal to those who want to write. Anne struggled over her writing and gives some tips here and there about writing and how it should be done. To the average girl it will seem that Anne led a very glamorous life, even though she was not a glamorous person; many will envy her opportunities. Young people who find the writing of exams difficult will sympathize with Anne because she never seemed to have enough time and could never answer all the questions.

It is difficult to find enough details on any event in her life to use in a book talk. Perhaps a summary of the foregoing note would be sufficient. The speaker might look at pages 88–110 to see if Colonel Lindbergh's first visit to the United States Embassy in Mexico has enough appeal.

The second volume, *Hour of Gold, Hour of Lead,* again uses letters and diary to tell of Anne's first happy months as she traveled with her husband who was making survey flights for transcontinental and transworld air routes. She shares her joy in her home and her anticipation of their first child, then describes the horror, suspense, and grief at the kidnapping of the baby. The third volume, *Locked Rooms and Open Doors,* covers three years. In 1933 the couple did

much traveling; in 1934 Anne's sister Elisabeth died and Anne worked on her book *North to the Orient;* 1935 included the trial of the kidnapper, the publication of the book, and their move to England where they hoped to have more privacy and to be safe. The fourth volume, *The Flower and the Nettle,* includes their years abroad before World War II, living in England and on an island off the coast of France, having another baby, traveling, and writing, with Charles carrying out an assignment for the American military attaché in Berlin. Anne describes these as "the happiest years of her life." *War Within and Without* is the final account of Anne Morrow Lindbergh's life and covers the years 1939 through 1944. There were at that time violent extremes of opinion for and against the United States' involvement in the European War. Charles Lindbergh, because he was opposed to his country's involvement, was the target of a good deal of abuse. Mrs. Lindbergh has tried to explain the reasons for her husband's viewpoint and emphasizes that the majority of the people in the United States were against entering the war before the Japanese attack. After Pearl Harbor Lindbergh devoted himself to the war effort. At first the government turned him down, but in 1942 he became a technical consultant to the Ford Motor Company which was building war planes. Later he did a tour of duty in the Pacific. Although those were difficult years for the Lindberghs, there was also much love, as well as some joy and happiness in their lives.

LLEWELLYN, RICHARD

How Green Was My Valley

1940. Macmillan.

With his shirts and socks wrapped in the little blue cloth that once had been his mother's head shawl, Huw Morgan looked about the sturdy little house being engulfed by mining slag and recalled his life there. He had grown up in the small Welsh mining town in the beautiful, peaceful valley, the youngest boy in a family with a strict, religious father and five headstrong, independent brothers. His earliest recollections were of his father and brothers coming home from the mines on Saturday night and giving his mother their earnings. Times were good and the money box in the kitchen was full, but soon trouble began to come to the mines. When the price of coal declined, wages dropped, and the miners were restless and unhappy. Huw's brother Davy became a union organizer, and two of his other brothers, Owen and Gwilym, helped him. Their father was opposed to unionizing the mines and felt there were other ways to deal with the owners. Finally, however, the men went on strike and the mines closed down. After six months of watching their families starve, the men agreed to return to work for lower wages. The book deals not only with the labor troubles but with the daily affairs of this warm-

hearted family. The reader shares their closeness in family gatherings, the gentleness of their teasing, the bitterness of their arguments, and the joy of their celebrations. One by one the brothers and sisters married and established their own homes. Huw was the pet of the family because of an illness brought on by the exposure he endured when he saved his mother's life, and for years he was confined to bed. His questions about the ways of adults were sometimes answered by his favorite sister-in-law, Bronwen, or by the minister, Mr. Gruffydd. It was the minister who gave Huw the faith that he would walk again and who carried him up the mountain to see the daffodils. He demanded the best from Huw, and the boy tried hard to live up to his friend's expectations. There was sadness in the family as well as joy. Owen's stubbornness made him reject the girl he loved. She married his brother Gwilym, but her love for Owen drove her out of her mind and brought an early, tragic death. Angharad wanted to marry Mr. Gruffydd, but as a minister he was dependent upon the sincere but meager generosity of his parish, and he knew he would never have much to offer her. She married someone else, but neither was really happy. As time went on, Ivor and Mr. Morgan were killed in mine accidents. Huw went to work in the mines when he finished school but soon left to make his living as a carpenter and cabinetmaker. Year after year the slag piles became larger and larger, encroaching upon the village, and finally, when the family home was threatened, only Huw remained.

This story, with its singing rhythms of Welsh speech, appeals to both boys and girls who are mature readers. It is a book of great beauty, human understanding, and sympathy. In his creation of the Morgan family the author has succeeded in presenting splendid characters, each with a distinct personality. The joy of the people, their gift for music, and their love for the old ways, so fast disappearing, provide a unique background.

Incidents which might be used for book talks are Huw's successful efforts to save his mother's life, pages 58–66, and his moving experience with his father just before the older man died in a mine cave-in, pages 490–93.

The attempts made by the United Mine Workers and the National Miners' Union to organize the coal miners in Kentucky in the early 1930s is told by James Sherburne in *Stand Like Men*. The brutality of the gun-thugs hired by the coal-mine operators and the suffering of the miners' families make grim reading in this true account of those bitter days. There are two or three good characterizations, but the book does not attempt to picture the community or portray a particular family, as the Llewellyn novel does. In *Winespring Mountain* by Charlton Ogburn, eighteen-year-old Wick Carter was sent to work in a strip mine in West Virginia by his father, president of the Allegheny-Keystone Coal Company. Wick became friends with a pretty blind girl whose family had a farm on Winespring Mountain.

She loved the out-of-doors and as the boy described to her the things he saw on their walks on the mountain, a deep appreciation for nature was awakened in him. When he heard that his father's company intended to strip-mine the beautiful mountain, Wick had to join the fight to make it a state park. There are in this book some very nice descriptions. Realizing his need for a better vocabulary and more picturesque language, Wick began to spend hours in the public library, reading, particularly poetry.

MC CAFFREY, ANNE

Dragonflight

1968. Ballantine.

Rukbat, a golden G-type star in the Sagittarian sector, had five planets plus a stray one with a wildly erratic orbit. The third planet, Pern, having developed air, water, and gravity, could support human life; therefore it was populated. Because undesirable life forms on the interloper tried periodically to bridge the gap between that planet and Pern, Pern's inhabitants had bred telepathic, fire-breathing dragons to protect their world. A breed of men and women who were able to train and control these defenders of Pern had developed as well. The creatures were able to go instantly from place to place. Their riders called this "going *between*." As the story opens, the wandering planet, Red Star, has been far away for generations, and people, having forgotten the enemy, see no need to support their unusual military forces. At one time there had been six strongholds or Weyrs, but now only one, Benden Weyr, remains. The settlements, or Holds, also have grown careless about their home defenses. The old queen dragon at Benden Weyr lays her last eggs; then she and her Weyrwoman die. When the eggs hatch, the golden egg will contain a golden dragon who will be queen and choose a new Weyrwoman. F'lar, mounted on his great bronze dragon Mnementh, flies on a tour with his twelve wingmen to find a woman who may be an acceptable candidate for the position of companion to the new queen. At Ruatha F'lar's attention is drawn to Lessa, daughter of the late Lord of Ruatha and the last surviving member of her line. He takes her back to Benden Weyr, and upon hatching, the queen dragon, Ramoth, chooses Lessa to be her Weyrwoman. Should the new queen favor Mnementh when she is ready to mate, it means that F'lar will become leader of all the dragon forces and that he and Lessa must mate. They do not get along well, because F'lar often disapproves of what Lessa is doing but Mnementh adores her. She has an ability that even F'lar does not have; she can communicate with all the dragons by telepathy. Both F'lar and Lessa are afraid of the Red Star which is again appearing in the sky and both study the old records to see how earlier generations coped with Thread, a parasite which propagates as fast as lightning and con-

sumes everything except water, metal, and rock. Lessa tries a possible solution to their problem by going back in time four hundred Turns, to bring back the dragonriders from five Weyrs who had mysteriously disappeared after the last pass of Red Star. This added defense saves the planet.

The story seizes the reader's interest immediately and maintains it to the end. The dragons, especially Mnementh, are endearing creatures with a nice sense of humor. McCaffrey's dragon series has been very popular with teenage readers. The books are well planned and well written.

Perhaps the best way to present the story in a book talk is to summarize the first forty-six pages, adding a few details to the first part of the above note.

In *Dragonquest* McCaffrey describes new problems which beset Pern: the intransigence of the Oldtimers who seem unable to adjust to modern life, the irregular fall on Pern of Threads from Red Star and the battle to destroy them, the discovery of fire lizard eggs and the trouble the hatch causes at first, and the disgraceful conduct of Kylara, which leads to the death of two golden queen dragons. In *The White Dragon* Jaxom and Ruth, the small white dragon which he had impressed, mature together. Eventually Jaxom is allowed to ride him, go *between*, and teach him to eat firestone. Master Robinton, who has been quietly exploring a coast of the southern continent, tells Jaxom about a beautiful cove which in time becomes the spot where Jaxom recuperates from a severe case of fire-head and from which he finds the site of the ancient settlers' village. Young people who are fascinated by the dragons of Pern will enjoy reading about a California dragon and its account of an encounter with humans and the dire outcome in *The Truth about Dragons*, written by Hazard Adams with tongue in cheek.

MASSIE, ROBERT K.

Nicholas and Alexandra

1967. Atheneum.

Although Alexander III's son Nicholas had received a good education, he had not been prepared to take over the throne. His father was a young man and expected to rule Russia for many years. Suddenly, however, Alexander's health began to fail, and he died. When Nicholas took over, his mother, Dowager Empress Marie, advised him on matters of state but when she asked for an unreasonable amount of money, he had to refuse and this ended their close association. His four uncles who held important positions often gave him bad advice and caused him much trouble for the first ten years of his reign. Although the tsar's wealth was great, he was often without money. His financial obligations for seven palaces, 15,000 officials and servants, numerous relatives, five royal theaters, the Imperial

Academy of Arts, and the Imperial Ballet were unbelievable. Nicholas had married Princess Alix of Hesse-Darmstadt, even though his parents had not approved of her. She had been converted to the Orthodox church and her name had been changed to Alexandra. She was shocked by the morals of the Russian aristocracy; they, in turn, thought her a prude and a bore. The first four children she presented Nicholas were daughters and this did not win any friends for the tsar. Kaiser Wilhelm III of Germany, Nicholas's cousin, was older and more experienced in government. He advised Nicholas for a while; it was his fault that Russia became embroiled in Asia and was defeated by the Japanese. That defeat was followed by a revolt of workers at home. When thousands of people tried to march to the Winter Palace to present a petition to Nicholas, soldiers opened fire on them. This turned many against him, although at the time Nicholas knew nothing about the march. The next child born to Nicholas and Alexandra was Alexis. Before long they discovered he was a hemophiliac and decided to keep this a secret. Alexandra met Rasputin through her dear friend Anna Vyrubova, who had implicit faith in the man and thought him divinely blessed. He did seem to be a good influence on young Alexis and is said to have improved the boy's health at various times. Things went from bad to worse in Russia. When World War I began, Nicholas tried to get Kaiser Wilhelm to put a stop to it but he refused and instead declared war on Russia. Although the Russians were all in favor of the war because they did not like Germany, Russia was in no way prepared for war. When his ministers became displeased with the defeats Russia's forces suffered, Nicholas removed the Grand Duke and assumed command of the army himself. With Nicholas away, Alexandra took over the government with Rasputin at her side. This situation was what really cost Nicholas the throne.

In this long, complex, detailed, and quite fascinating book readers will learn a great deal about the social life of the Russian aristocracy and the royal family. Rasputin, who was a strange person, at one time was accepted by the highest authorities in the Orthodox Church but, as time passed, was despised by almost everyone. It is interesting to observe the changes in attitude of the nobility and of the peasantry toward the government and the royal family as conditions in Russia and in Europe changed. The reader feels sympathy for Nicholas, who had such tremendous odds against him and yet, at least for a time, understands Alexandra's championing of Rasputin.

Chapter 1 conveys many details of the social season in imperial Russia that would be of interest to some students. It also provides a graphic portrait of Alexander III which could appeal to yet another group of readers. This could be combined with the beginning of chapter 2 which describes how members of the royal family were brought up. Nicholas's young manhood and his feeling for Princess Alix also are possibilities, pages 16–38.

In the play *Anastasia* by Marcelle Maurette, three unscrupulous Russian refugees in Germany decide to produce a girl who could pass as Anastasia who, it was rumored, had not died with the others of her family but had been rescued by Russian guards. The young woman is able to convince her grandmother that she is Anastasia, but disappears when she is to appear in court to prove she is entitled to the fortune her father had deposited in foreign banks. *The Cherry Orchard* by Anton Checkhov depicts the dullness, profligacy, and stagnation of the privileged class in Russia under the tsars. C. L. Sulzberger's brief, handsomely illustrated history of the Habsburg, Hohenzollern, and Romanov dynasties, *The Fall of Eagles*, may satisfy those readers who like history and want to know a little more about the ruling families of Russia, Germany, and Austria-Hungary before their downfall. In Patricia Wright's *A Space of the Heart*, Eleanor Lovell went to Russia to be the companion of an older woman. Fortunately, when this position fell through, a Russian general she had met on the ship found her another, as a governess. Times were bad during the Crimean War, and she helped out in the hospitals when wounded foreign soldiers were brought in. Eventually she fell in love with the general but it was years before they could marry.

MAUGHAM, W. SOMERSET

Of Human Bondage

1915. Doubleday.

Orphaned at the age of nine, sensitive, lame Philip Carey went to live with his uncle at the vicarage of Blackstable, sixty miles from London. The pompous vicar was a penny-pinching, smug individual lacking in human understanding. Philip grew up in a sterile atmosphere, becoming ever more hostile and bitter about his clubfoot. At eighteen, having come into a small inheritance, he persuaded his uncle to allow him to go to Germany to study. There he met several young men whose discussions convinced him that the rigorous religious training of his youth was the cause of his unhappiness and spiritual suffocation. As he denied the existence of God, he denied his own love-starved youth and experienced a feeling of idealistic freedom. He began to discover that he was born in bondage and became free of one emotional shackle only to be enchained again. He studied art in Paris, but after two years gave up the idea of being an artist and went back to London to study medicine. There he met the unscrupulous, amoral Mildred Rogers, a crude, uneducated waitress. Transferring all of his romantic idealism to her, he was once again enslaved by his own passions. Mildred spurned his proposal of marriage and went away with another man. Later when she returned to London, penniless and pregnant, Philip took her in and cared for her until her child was born. Then she left him again, and Philip rededicated himself to his work and to his new friend, Athelny. One

day he came upon Mildred in the street and realized she was earning her living as a prostitute. Sorry for her, he took her in as his housekeeper. Mildred, who now professed her love for him, became insanely angry when he repulsed her. She virtually destroyed the apartment and his possessions before leaving him once more. When Philip was forced to give up his medical studies for lack of money, the Athelny family took him in and helped him find employment. Then the death of his uncle provided him with an inheritance that permitted him to finish his medical education. Although he was more than thirty years old when he graduated, he still held on to unrealistic, romantic dreams of the future, planning to become a ship's doctor and sail around the world before settling down to a permanent practice. But through his intimate association with Sally Athelny, the daughter of his friend, Philip finally realized that he really wanted a home, a family, and security. He had tried to live in the future; now he wanted to enjoy the present.

Mature readers follow this long autobiographical novel with interest. Here is a young man's search for a way of life. The thoughts and actions of a frustrated and confused boy are told with mature wisdom and understanding. The book traces Philip's development from uncertainty and bewilderment to maturity and spiritual freedom, when he finally is able to achieve a satisfying philosophy of life and face the future with confidence, courage, and humor. It is a long book, but it is one of the rare psychological novels that appeals to boys probably even more than to girls.

To introduce the story to individual readers, discuss Philip's life in Germany and his attempts to understand himself and his place in the future, pages 107–55.

In some ways David in *David Copperfield** by Charles Dickens resembles Philip and the book could be suggested to readers who liked the Maugham book. *The Way of All Flesh* by Samuel Butler is another autobiographical novel in which the main character has difficulty in adjusting to life and does not come to terms with his problems until he is well into his adult years. A brief note on page 52 gives a little more information about this title. *Martin Eden* by Jack London is partly autobiographical. Inspired by a girl from a well-to-do family he chanced to meet, Martin, a sailor, undertook a program of reading, study, and self-improvement. He was so enthusiastic, energetic, and determined that in two or three years he became so knowledgeable that he began to look down on people he had once regarded as intellectuals. Suddenly he had a desire to write, turning out articles and stories that were seldom accepted by the magazines to which he sent them. Seeing no future in his writing, his girl and his family urged him to get a job but he refused. One by one they deserted him; then his best friend died. When a publisher finally took a chance on one of his books, which turned out to be a huge success, he was suddenly famous. But it was too late. Disillusioned, he had

lost all interest in life and the story has a sad ending. The librarian may also want to introduce *The Moon and Sixpence* by Maugham. The story is told by a writer who had become acquainted with Mrs. Strickland, a member of the literary intelligentsia. When her husband left her, she asked the writer to go to Paris to try to persuade her husband to return. The story becomes Strickland's, who never did return to his family. The writer learned about him when he either ran into him or heard about him in the years that followed.

MELCHIOR, IB

The Haigerloch Project

1977. Harper.

In 1945 a German underground operator in Frankfurt managed to get a message out concerning a scientist who was ready to defect to the Allies. The job of reaching the man was turned over to the Counter Intelligence Corps by the Supreme Headquarters Allied Expeditionary Forces and two men were sent through the American lines in the hope they could reach the scientist in Mayen. From him they learned that the Germans were working on a bomb and that Himmelmann in Haigerloch could give them more information. This time the operation was assigned to the Office of Strategic Services. They needed to know how far the Germans had progressed. Two men were chosen and put through a crash course of rigorous training. One was Sigmund Brandt who had been doing contractual work for the Manhattan Project. The other was Dirk Vandermeer, an OSS agent, who had been badly hurt on an earlier mission and was getting back in shape. Both men had been born in Europe and were fluent in German. Their first confrontation with the Germans was in a small village when they were stopped by a farmer. Dirk got them out of that predicament by pretending to be a black marketeer. The farmer's greed persuaded him to accept their story and the money for some produce; he also helped them on their way. After several more adventures they reached Hechingen and contacted the safe house there. The man they were to meet had been killed in an accident the day before, but his uncle, aunt, and sister were glad to do what they could to help. Early in their stay their radio was smashed when Dirk had to make a fast getaway. Since they had no way to report progress, the officers in Washington soon decided the two men had to be dead or had been captured. However, they made contact with Himmelmann who kept them abreast of progress on the bomb. The head of the Gestapo was sure they were in the village but had been unable to get his hands on them, although the Americans had had some close calls. Finally they came up with an ingenious scheme to get into the restricted area and cause the failure of the bomb test. Then they had to make their escape with the Gestapo hot on their trail.

It is a fact that early in 1945, when the Third Reich was on the

verge of collapse, German scientists were working feverishly to make an atomic bomb in a complex of caves near the town of Haigerloch in the Black Forest. How much of the novel based on this fact is true only the author knows. He was in the OSS during World War II and also served in the United States Military Intelligence Service. He says that many of the elements and incidents of the story are based on actual events and his own experiences. The story holds the reader's attention and is not so incredible as some in this genre. There are some interesting characters, rather well depicted.

A book talk could describe the obstacle course that Sig and Dirk have to run in training, pages 66–85. Their outwitting of the farmer who captures them in a German village is another possibility, pages 105, 110–23.

Another book of international intrigue is *Firefox* by Craig Thomas. When England and the United States realized that Russia had a plane so vastly superior to any of theirs that it would be ten to fifteen years before they could come up with one comparable, they decided to steal one of the two prototypes being prepared for final trials at Bilyarak. Michael Gant, an outstanding pilot in Vietnam, is chosen for the job. The story is very exciting and suspenseful. A true story, *MiG Pilot*, by John Barron tells of a Russian pilot who flew his plane from a Russian base to Japan and asked for sanctuary in the United States. This account seems to indicate that thus far the advanced technology of Russian planes, such as the one described in *Foxfire*, has not yet been achieved. Peter Miller, a free-lance reporter in Hamburg in *The Odessa File* by Frederick Forsyth, decided to infiltrate the Odessa, a secret organization of former SS men who had operated under Hitler, in order to bring to justice the man responsible for the annihilation of thousands at the concentration camp at Riga. Only good luck led him to the man, as his impatience made him reveal his cover to the enemy almost immediately. In 1940 General Walter Schellenberg was sent to Lisbon by Hitler to kidnap the Duke and Duchess of Windsor. Not only had Hitler fully expected to be able to force England to surrender shortly, he intended to place the Windsors on the English throne and to have their cooperation in conquering the rest of Europe. The story, based on documented historical fact, of how the Duke outwitted the Germans is told by Harry Patterson in *To Catch a King*.

MELVILLE, HERMAN

Moby Dick

[1851]

As a way of releasing excess energy, Ishmael, the storyteller, says he frequently signed on some ship as a common sailor. Previous to his voyage on the *Pequod* he had worked on a merchant ship but this time the Fates decreed that he try a whaling voyage. He soon learned that Captain Ahab, who had lost a leg to Moby Dick, a great white

whale, desired only to kill that whale. One evening Captain Ahab assembled the whole crew and told them that the man who first spotted the white whale would be given a sixteen-dollar gold piece. Starbuck, the chief mate, objected to Ahab's determination for vengeance, but the Captain talked him down and at length all men aboard joined Ahab in his vow to seek and kill Moby Dick. Ahab did not hear Starbuck's presentiment of disaster. The reader learns a great deal about whales and the whaling business as the story progresses. During Ishmael's first experience going after a whale, the boat was swamped, then it was caught in a storm and given up for lost, but the next morning, boat and crew were hauled aboard the *Pequod.* Ishmael decided that if this was a sample of whaling, he had better make his will. Each ship sighted was asked if the crew had seen the white whale. The captain of an English ship had lost an arm in the season before due to Moby Dick. Captain Ahab invited him to join in the hunt, but the Englishman had no desire to lose his other arm and declined. Sometime later another ship approached the *Pequod.* It was the *Rachel* out of Nantucket. One of her boats had harpooned the white whale, which then carried the boat out of sight. The *Rachel's* captain pleaded with Ahab to help him search for the missing boat and its crew, which included his son. Ahab refused and the *Pequod* sailed on. Finally they sighted Moby Dick and three boats were lowered with Ahab in charge of one. But the whale was too cunning; it dived, came up under Ahab's boat, and bit it in two pieces. Starbuck maneuvered the *Pequod* so that Ahab and his crew could be picked up. The next day when the whale was seen again, all three boats got their harpoons into him. Instead of swimming away as a whale usually did, Moby Dick tangled the lines, smashed two boats, and overturned Ahab's before taking off. On the third day when the boats were lowered, Ahab's boat was immediately surrounded by sharks. The whale stove in two of the boats and the men retreated to the ship. When Ahab attacked the whale, it turned on the *Pequod* and, in spite of everything the crew could do, hit the ship's starboard bow, staving it in. Ahab persisted in his pursuit of Moby Dick; but the whale overcame him and the crew and sank the *Pequod.* Ismael was the only survivor. He was picked up by the *Rachel* the next day.

Some readers may be put off by Melville's digressions from the story and by his detailed descriptions. However, almost all of these include interesting information that a thoughtful reader will take in stride. One surely learns a great deal about whaling, and the lesson that vengeance does not pay is obvious.

For a book talk the speaker might use Ishmael's introduction to Queequeg, a harpooner with whom he had to share a room at the inn before the voyage, chapter 3. Another possibility is the occasion when Ahab talks to the crew and tells them his purpose, chapter 35.

Good readers should be introduced to the fine writing and sensitive portrayal of characters so typical of Laurens Van der Post. His

story *The Hunter and the Whale*, told by Peter, who is only fourteen years of age at the beginning, concerns the lad's experiences on a whaling ship and the tragedy that follows the captain's pursuit of Caesar, the greatest sperm whale. Peter's friendship with Lief, the Norwegian cook, and Mlangeni, the Zulu stoker, adds richness to the narrative. See Farley Mowat's *A Whale for the Killing** for another story of whales and the cruelty of humans toward them. The librarian can also introduce *Typee* in which Melville recounts his adventures among the Typees on an island of the Marquesas after he and another sailor escaped from the whaling ship on which they had been working.

MILLER, ARTHUR

Death of a Salesman

1949. Viking.

Willy Loman, a sixty-three-year-old salesman, returns home the same day he sets out on a sales trip to New England. He had gotten as far as Yonkers and finding he could not keep his mind on his driving, he turned around and came home. His wife, Linda, and two sons, Biff and Happy, are in bed. Linda urges Willy to ask the boss to allow him to work in New York. Biff, who is thirty-four, had been working on a farm in Texas but has just returned home. Happy has a good job, an apartment, and a car, but no wife. He confesses to Biff that he is not really happy. Because Willy wants to see both sons in good jobs and earning good money, he constantly tries to build their egos. He owes money and is not selling much. As an incentive or a threat the boss has put him on commission only. Biff decides to ask a former employer to lend him money so he can go into business. At this point in the play the reader realizes that Willy Loman is not what he pretends to be. He wants people to think he is a supersalesman, but actually he is quite mediocre. When Biff was about to graduate from high school, he was warned that he was flunking in math. Because he was a great football player and had a scholarship for the University of Virginia, he felt that the teacher would not flunk him but he did. Biff took the train to Boston to see his father and persuade him to talk with the teacher. Should the man still insist on failing him, Biff would go to summer school. When he reached his father's hotel room, Biff learned that Willy had another woman; Biff also began to catch on to the fact that his father and the family lived in a dream world. This realization seemed to affect him so deeply that he did not attend summer school or college. He left home and was gone for several years. When he learns that Happy is not what he pretends to be, that his father has lost his job, and knowing that he himself is still pretending, he tries to make the whole family face the facts and start over. This is too much for Willy. He kills himself by smashing up his car.

Willy, a pathetic character unwilling to face up to his shortcomings, taught his sons to do the same. Willy seemed to have a natural gift for carpentry and over the years had made many improvements in their home. But the prestige of supersalesmanship seemed to promise a more prosperous life, so Willy abandoned his natural bent. Willy needed to build his self-esteem; this he did by pretending to everyone that he was a much better salesman than he actually was. He based his success not so much on his ability to sell but on his likeableness as a person. This again was self-deception, because none of his former clients or business associates attended his funeral.

The scenes in the play are so short, there seems to be nothing which can be used for a book talk, unless it can be eased in with the presentation of a group of plays.

In *All My Sons*, another play of Miller's, he again portrays a father who lived a lie. Joe Keller, owner of a factory which made airplane engines during World War II, allowed defective engines to be shipped and as a result twenty-one pilots died. Joe placed the blame on an employee who was not guilty but who spent years in prison as a result. Joe's dishonesty brought tragedy to his own family also. *The Glass Menagerie*, a play by Tennessee Williams, can also be suggested. In this instance it is the mother, Amanda Wingfield, who lives in a dream world. She professes to remember how popular she was as a young girl and keeps urging her daughter Laura to be as vivacious, outgoing, and attractive as she supposedly had been. Laura, who is lame, painfully shy, and scared, needs skillful help in adjusting to the present world, but her mother either is unable to see what needs to be done or refuses to face the situation. Paul Zindel in his play *The Effect of Gamma Rays on Man-in-the-Moon Marigolds* presents another family beset with personality problems and lacking a father figure. Beatrice Hunsdorfer, an unhappy, embittered woman, has two teenage daughters, Ruth, who is mentally disturbed, and Tillie, who is quite a good student interested in science. Their lives seem as pitiful as those of the other families discussed here.

MOORHEAD, ALAN

Darwin and the Beagle

1969. Harper.

Shortly after Charles Darwin received his Bachelor of Arts degree from Cambridge University, he was offered the opportunity of becoming the naturalist on the H.M.S. *Beagle* which was soon to set off on a voyage around the world. The young man had been somewhat of a protégé of Professor Henslow who lectured on botany at Cambridge; he had also been a friend of Adam Sedgwick, Professor of Geology, with whom he had taken a trip to Wales to study rock formations. These friendships and studies had been enjoyable, but as a lifework Darwin had chosen the ministry. Since he was only

twenty-two and inexperienced, it was unusual that he was offered such an opportunity. The invitation intrigued him and eventually he won his father's reluctant approval. Charles would receive no compensation for his work, and his father would be required to pay his expenses. The *Beagle's* captain, Robert FitzRoy, was a religious man who expected young Darwin to make discoveries that would substantiate the story of Genesis in the Bible. Moorhead takes the reader with Darwin on his five-year voyage, describing his long treks into unexplored territory, as well as his visits to areas frequented by primitive peoples, by an army of rebels, and by inhospitable immigrants. While Captain FitzRoy was busy mapping the coast of South America, Darwin had plenty of time to explore the tropical forest, the pampas, the Andes mountains, and some nearby islands. He collected many species of animals, birds, insects, and reptiles. Some were mounted, others pickled, and others preserved as skins. Often Darwin came across the remains of animals that were extinct; these were unearthed and shipped to England along with the other specimens he collected. Darwin also made copious notes; an assistant made many sketches and painted scenes for him. He wrote enthusiastically to his professors and family, describing his experiences; the author sometimes quotes from these letters in his account. Gradually Darwin came to the conclusion that species had not been created complete and unchanging, that heredity and environment had caused new forms of life to evolve, which was a bitter disappointment to Captain FitzRoy. Darwin decided to give up his idea of joining the clergy. When his father died, Charles inherited a tidy sum which allowed him to study and write. Moorhead mentions only briefly the controversy stirred up by some of Darwin's publications.

This very readable book can be used as an introduction to Darwin and to other books of travel. It is filled with handsome color plates and with monochrome paintings and drawings illustrating the scenes, people, and creatures he saw during the voyage.

The fact that Darwin was offered such an opportunity and something about his family and background as given in chapter 1 may be enough to interest a group of young people. The book talker can add a little from two paragraphs on page 106 which describes Darwin's work at Maldonado in Uruguay and the specimens he sent to Professor Henslow. His visit to the camp of the rebel, General Rosas, is an interesting sidelight, pages 116–23. His trip to Santa Fe in Argentina is also a possibility, pages 131–33.

Also suggest *Mutiny on the Bounty* by Charles Nordhoff and James Hall. Roger Byam was only seventeen when Captain Bligh invited him to sail to Tahiti on the H.M.S. *Bounty*. His chief responsibility was the compilation of a dictionary of the Tahitian language. Roger became involved in a mutiny, which makes this story a bit different from Darwin's. *Inherit the Wind*, the play by Jerome Lawrence, gives a dramatic picture of the trial which results when

Bertram Cates, a young teacher, breaks a Tennessee law by talking about Darwin's theory of evolution in his science class. If a young person is interested in knowing something more about Clarence Darrow, who defended Bertram Cates, he might be introduced to *Clarence Darrow, A One-Man Play* by David Rintels. Darrow as the only speaker gives the reader information about a number of the famous trials in which he participated. There is not much about "The Monkey Trial" as it was nicknamed. The reader will feel he knows Darrow when he finishes the play. A young reader with a good deal of persistence might read *The Origin* by Irving Stone. This very long biographical novel about Charles Darwin gives much information about the *Beagle*'s voyage and tells in great detail what happened to all the specimens Darwin collected, of his own writing, and of his growing renown. It also describes his marriage and happy family life, his ill health, and his many friends.

MOWAT, FARLEY

A Whale for the Killing

1972. Little, Brown.

The author and his wife Claire had been exploring the coast and nearby islands of Newfoundland in the summer of 1962 and decided they would like to live there. They had not intended to settle in Burgeo, but the engine of their little schooner had broken down and they put in there for repairs. They found a suitable house in Messers Cove nearby and bought it. They became especially interested in whales because a small pod of fin whales had begun to spend the winters among the Burgeo Islands. Although Mowat says that little is actually known about these mammals, he includes some information about different varieties and something about the history of whaling. Primitive peoples were hunting whales as early as 2000 BC, killing a few. As time went on, newer, more efficient methods were developed, and the kill increased. Today the steam catcher, whale gun, and hollow lance allow the whales little chance for survival and several varieties are already extinct. In 1946 the International Whaling Commission, run by whalers, was set up in Norway with the stated intention of protecting threatened species and regulating the hunting of them. Mowat explains how the regulations play directly into the hands of the whalers without actually curtailing the taking of whales. He tells of two incidents he witnessed when whales were slaughtered to satisfy the lust of people who killed solely for the sake of killing, since they could make no use of the bodies of their victims. One instance occurred at St. Pierre, off the coast of Newfoundland. There a pod of pothead whales—fifteen adults and six or seven calves—swam into the harbor to escape some killer whales. When the whales were discovered, two overpowered launches began to chase them. Gunners on shore and in the boats poured shots into

them. This brutality went on for two days until eventually the panicked whales ran aground, where they died. The other took place near Burgeo and caused the death of a pregnant female fin whale from the small pod which wintered nearby. The whale became trapped in a pond which the very high spring tide enabled her to enter from the ocean. The persecution of the female went on for days. Mowat called every organization and person he knew in Canada and the United States who might be interested in saving her, but only one person responded favorably, and he was unable to come immediately. In desperation Mowat turned to the news media; the story also was carried on radio and television. Many people in Burgeo disapproved of what was happening to the whale but could not seem to do anything to stop it. After the news release, offers to help came from many sources and the news media sent camera crews. The biggest problem was to get food for the whale which ate live herring. Except on one occasion bad weather prevented seiners from driving schools of fish into the pond. The whale was wasting away and her injuries from bullets and the ramming by boats became septic. In a few more days she died and when the news made headlines, many of the people of the settlement turned against Mowat. They considered that he had shamed them before the world.

Mowat has written a poignant story which drives home the fact that humankind has decimated so many of the world's animal species. Often greed has been the motivating force. Mowat writes extremely well and young people should be introduced to his books. In a final chapter entitled "To Make Amends," he suggests ways in which people can help save endangered species.

A book talker could use chapter 4 which tells how whales are being killed by whalers. Mowat's account of the killing of the pod of whales at St. Pierre is brief and could also be used, pages 60–69.

Man Kind? by Cleveland Amory is a shocking exposé of humans who are slaughtering wildlife, often in the name of conservation. The author does not hesitate to name bloodthirsty people and organizations. In *The Silent Sky* Allan Eckert tells how greedy, thoughtless Americans slaughtered over a billion passenger pigeons in the 1800s. Today not one of these birds survives. Eckert also wrote *The Great Auk* which graphically presents the story of the last members of that species of auk. Daniel Mannix in *The Last Eagle* tells how carelessness and indifference are a threat to the survival of our national bird. Another animal almost exterminated by whites in the United States is the buffalo. Several authors have written about the hide men who wantonly killed these animals only for their hides, leaving the carcasses to rot, and robbing the Indians of their chief source of meat, clothing, and fuel. One that can be highly recommended is Mari Sandoz who describes these hunters, the trouble they stirred up with the Indians, and what life was like in the frontier settlements in *The Buffalo Hunters*. Some young people may have a

scientific interest in whales. If so, recommend *The Blue Whale* by George L. Small, Professor of Geography at the City University of New York. He explains the difficulties of scientifically studying whales and what has been learned about them, how the decimation of blue whales has taken place, the economics of whaling, national whaling policies, and the efforts to control whaling. He has little hope for the survival of blue whales.

MUNTZ, HOPE

The Golden Warrior

1949. Scribner.

Edward the Confessor, King of England from 1042 to 1066, had no children, but there were several willing candidates ready for the succession. Bishop Brihtwold had had a dream early in Edward's reign in which St. Peter supposedly said, "The Kingdom of the English belongs to God; after Edward He shall provide a King according to His pleasure." Earl Godwin, until he died in 1052, was the strongest man in the kingdom, the power behind the throne. Upon Godwin's death, his son Harold inherited Godwin's titles and lands and took his place with the King. In gratitude for a miraculous cure of an ailment which had wasted him for a long time, Harold strove to do what he thought was just and right for England and was well loved by the common people. He was curious about William, Duke of Normandy, who was sometimes mentioned as Edward's successor, and when Harold was shipwrecked on the Normandy coast, imprisoned, and held for ransom by a minor noble, he appealed to William for aid. William graciously paid the ransom and welcomed Harold and his men as his guests. Harold did not realize that he was actually William's prisoner until he received an urgent message from England summoning him home as soon as possible. He was surprised and shocked to find that the man he had admired so much should be so lacking in integrity as to deny him the right to return home. In order to obtain his freedom Harold had to swear that he would help William gain the throne of England when Edward died. Harold knew that an oath made under pressure was not binding, but when he found that the covered article on which he had sworn was not a sacred jewel as he had supposed but the bones of a saint, he was dismayed, since such an oath was more binding than an ordinary one. He was also forced to leave his young brother as hostage and to become betrothed to William's daughter, Agatha. It was a heavy price to pay for freedom and one that eventually brought about his downfall. When Edward died, the Great Council chose Harold as King. Now known as Harold II, he broke his oath to William and ruled England from January to October 1066. Then he marched south to meet William in battle at Hastings, after having suffered great losses in his victory over the Northmen at Stamford Bridge.

Harold and his brothers fell on the field of battle and England passed into Norman hands.

Mature high school students enjoy the superb characterizations of the two protagonists: Harold and William. The stories of the battles at Stamford Bridge and Hastings have an epic quality that make the historic characters and events very real to the reader.

A weird incident that can be used as a book talk is Harold's encounter in the forest with the Old Woman who bit his hand and brought a strange sickness upon him, pages 45–57. Pages 110–41 tell of Harold's shipwreck and his rescue by William, of the months spent in Normandy, and of his oath to help William gain the throne of England.

Another story about this period is *The Last Englishman* by Hebe Weenolsen. In 1070 Hereward Leofricson returned to England from the Holy Land to find his country in the hands of the Normans. With his followers he succeeded in driving many of the Normans from northern England. William came north hoping to persuade Hereward to become his ally. The young hero preferred to die fighting the enemy. There is a love story too, but the happiness of the young couple is interrupted by Hereward's death. Thomas Costain believed that history could be written so that it had "drama, color, and visual substance" and proved it when he wrote *The Conquerors*. Beginning with the Norman victory in 1066 Costain carries the history of England on to the death of John in 1216, depicting the men and women of the period with vitality, authenticity, and glamor. In *The Fourteenth of October* by Winifred Bryher, a Yorkshire lad named Wulf had been given as a hostage to the Danes who frequently invaded England. He was bought by a Norman for whom he worked three years before escaping. Wulf returned to England but was too late to join Harold against the Norman invaders. Unable to live under the conquerors, he chose to leave England and seek his fortune elsewhere.

NEWMAN, DAISY

I Take Thee, Serenity

1975. Houghton.

Although Serenity Millburn Ross, nicknamed Rennie, had been sleeping with Peter Holland in his college dormitory room for three months and thought herself very sophisticated, she was still moved by memories of a picture depicting the simplicity and lack of sophistication of a Quaker wedding which hung on the third floor landing at home. During intercession in January her parents suggested that she and Peter be married in June, as it would be improper for them to go on a camping trip in the Rockies by themselves next summer unless they were man and wife. At first Peter was not sure he wanted to be married so soon, but after a six-day separation, he sent Rennie

red roses and agreed to a wedding. He decided that it was not right for them to sleep together again until they were married. Peter had grown up in a Christian home, but Rennie's family had never bothered with church attendance. During spring vacation Rennie's parents wanted her to decide on the church, her dress, her silver pattern, and other details for a very large and elegant wedding, but she was not interested. She asked questions about a Quaker wedding but her father, who had come from that background, could give her little information. He had a cousin, Oliver Otis, who clung to Quaker ways but was unwilling to contact him. When Rennie went back to school and talked with Peter, she decided to telephone Oliver and invite herself for a weekend. Oliver and Daphne, his wife, were delighted by her visit, but Rennie was uncomfortable, first because of the aftereffects of a stroke which Daphne had suffered, and second, because the language and the words they used made no sense to her when Oliver quoted from the Bible and other books. She intended to leave the next day, but when she learned that Daphne, who had been a well-known artist, wanted to paint her portrait, she decided to stay. She asked many questions about Quaker weddings and Oliver thoughtfully explained that Quaker marriage is a very serious step for which careful preparation must be made, not only by the couple but by those who belong to the Meeting, as the Quaker congregation is called. When she attended Meeting with them on Sunday, she felt that something was lacking in her, realized that Peter had felt it too, but did not know what to do about it. Back at college she tried to tell Peter how much the visit meant to her. The volume of the works of John Woolman, so precious to Oliver, which he had secretly slipped into her bookbag helped Peter to understand. Before exam time, when Peter and Rennie decided to postpone their wedding, her parents were disappointed but his were pleased. For the summer Rennie went to stay with Oliver and Daphne; Peter took a room and job on a potato farm nearby. He was invited for supper each evening and the young couple were able to spend time on the beach where they could talk quietly and come to understand one another better. Although Rennie had to work very hard, she thought that the joy she felt and shared was the nicest thing that had ever happened to her. When Rennie asked Daphne to design her wedding dress, she sketched several lovely, simple gowns, but the bouquet she suggested was made up of spring flowers. That bothered Rennie until she and Peter had their interview with the Friends' committee on clearness. When they confessed that sex was their main reason for being married that fall, the committee led them to see that this was no basis for marriage; they decided to wait until after graduation. Rennie eventually saw how right Daphne had been. The next nine months held a great deal of hard work, some sadness, a new understanding between Rennie and her parents, the opportunity for a new career for Peter, and a lovely Quaker wedding.

This is a love story with a difference because in it two modern young people grow in grace, mature in love, and come to joy, wanting their home to be like Oliver and Daphne's "where God becomes more real to those who dwell there and those who visit." The young couple are not the only ones who profited. Rennie's presence in the home helped Daphne draw out of her shell and get back to her easel, their daughter Heather came to have a better understanding of herself and her parents, and Rennie's parents came to realize that material things are not as essential as they had thought. Young people cannot help but be impressed as Rennie was by what love can be and do in a home.

In a book talk, use the scenes in which Rennie's parents urge her to marry Peter in June and Rennie asks Peter if he is willing, pages 6–13.

In an effort to clear up the problem which kept Miriam Guild from accepting Mike Andree's proposal of marriage, she writes her autobiography from the age of twelve as Mike had suggested. Ignorant of her parents' lives she went to the village in Maine where a school friend of her mother had lived. Tragedy overtook her there, but the reader feels that Mike would be able to help her face the past and overcome it. This is the story in *Where the Lost Aprils Are* by Elizabeth Ogilvie. Another follow-up the librarian could suggest is *A Matter of Feeling* by Janine Boissard, a novel about a delightful French family. Pauline, who tells the story, is still attending school in Paris. A friend introduces Pauline to her Uncle Pierre, some twenty-five years their senior. Pierre and Pauline fall in love and he gently introduces her to her own body and to sex. Pauline asks her father, a doctor, for the pill and goes to her lover as often as possible. When the woman he had been living with for years and who was the mother of his child returned to Paris, Pierre had to turn Pauline away. A real-life love story with nice touches of humor can be found in *I Love You, Irene* by MacKinley Kantor. He includes only the first twenty-eight months of his marriage to Irene, when he was struggling to become a writer.

O'BRIEN, TIM

If I Die in a Combat Zone . . . Box Me Up and Ship Me Home

1973. Delacourt/Seymour Lawrence.

After graduating from college in 1968, Tim O'Brien received his induction notice for the army. Fighting was still going on in Vietnam. Tim thought the war was wrong and, although he did not want to go into the army, he could not figure out how to avoid it without bringing disgrace to his family. He felt he owed his country something, but going to Vietnam was not the way he wanted to repay his debt. He hated everything about basic training with its stupidity,

arrogance, and brutality. He avoided everyone for a while but finally became friends with Erik who was also a college man and a lot like Tim. They kept in touch during the time they were overseas. When Tim was sent to advanced infantry training, he began to consider deserting the army and flying to Ireland from Canada and then on to Sweden. At the last minute he decided against it and instead went to Vietnam. There a non-com tried to talk him into signing up for three years and getting a safe job behind the lines. When Tim decided to take his chances and get out of the army as soon as possible, he was assigned to Alpha Company. He graphically describes what it was like to be looking for the Viet Cong. Most American casualties seemed to come from several types of mines, grenades, and booby traps the enemy concealed in strategic places. Alpha Company often raided villages, bombed tunnels, and herded old men, women, and children out of their homes. Tim's lieutenant claimed that these people aided the enemy and therefore they were enemies themselves. The war in Vietnam was a completely different type of war from earlier ones. Often a helicopter could come to Alpha with a hot meal and cold beer. Sometimes Tim was ordered to send the plan for an attack to headquarters, though the company never attempted to carry it out and would just lie low that night. Tim had one officer he admired, but the others were poor specimens for whom he had no respect. Toward the end of his stay in Vietnam, he was assigned to a rear area as a typist and early in 1970 he returned home to be discharged.

As might be expected the language used by officers and enlisted men alike is rough. Still when Tim and Erik had a discussion or wrote to one another no bad language was used, and Tim uses none in his descriptions. Both young men had literary backgrounds and the reader gets a taste of what a good education can mean intellectually. There are several discussions between Tim and various people about what courage really is; these give the reader food for thought.

There are a number of incidents in chapter 13 describing the war which could be made into a book talk. Chapter 14 describes different types of mines and the injuries they inflict. Chapter 15 tells how the Americans treated the people of one village.

In *Fields of Fire* James Webb has pulled no punches in describing the actions of a squad of United States Marines during the Vietnam war. In spite of unspeakably horrible living conditions, terrifying patrols, and ghastly wounds, most of these Marines, often misfits in civilian life, acted with incredible courage under fire; those who survived and recovered from their wounds came back to rejoin their squad, even though they had other choices. Eventually all but one died or were so badly mutilated that they had to go back to the States. The gutter language, atrocities, the sexual activity, and the grisly deaths require that the reader have a strong stomach. The American people need to realize what this war was like. According

to *Fire in the Lake* by Frances Fitzgerald, traditionally Vietnamese law rested not upon the idea of individual rights but upon duties—the duty of a ruler to his people, a father to his son, and vice versa. They believed there was only one way, the will of Heaven and for this reason all citizens would adopt the same way. Because they did not understand the Vietnamese nor were they familiar with their history and philosophy, the Americans made many mistakes. The book is long and not easy to read, but a mature student interested in why the United States failed in Vietnam will find in it much valuable information. When Lieutenant-Colonel Hambleton had to bail out of his plane, his parachute landed him in the middle of a North Vietnamese offensive movement. Although the United States Air Force used protective action to keep him from being captured by the enemy, he spent two weeks without food and with little water before he was rescued. Meanwhile he was able to direct planes to destroy gun emplacements near his hideout. *Bat–21* by William C. Anderson is high in suspense and based on fact.

O'CONNOR, D'ARCY

The Money Pit

1978. Coward.

In 1795 a teenage boy wandering on Oak Island off the southern coast of Nova Scotia discovered what was later to be called the "Money Pit." He and his friends did a little digging but found nothing. Since that time millions of dollars have been spent in an effort to reach the treasure that is believed to lie at the bottom of the pit or elsewhere on the island. In 1803 when excavations had reached a depth of ninety-three feet, salt water began to seep in, filling the pit for sixty feet, rising and falling with the tide. The company sponsoring the dig tried again the next year but could not solve the water problem. Forty-five years later another syndicate was formed to make another search. This group, using an auger, was sure that it had drilled through at least one chest of coins, but the auger only brought up a few links of gold chain. A member of the party discovered that the nearby beach was artificial and covered up a flood tunnel which led to the Money Pit. The syndicate's attempt to block off this tunnel was unsuccessful and these men too gave up when their money ran out. Over ten years passed while different groups tried to block off the tunnels bringing water into the pit. By 1935 so many shafts had been dug that the original pit was lost among them. Many have continued the search, new ideas and innovative methods have been tried—none was successful. Several persons have lost their lives. In 1950 M. R. Chappel acquired control of the island and tried metal-finding equipment without success. In 1965 a geologist, who brought in heavy bulldozers, blocked the eastern tunnel which had brought in salt water, but water continued to pour in from some

other source. However, this work came to naught and in his efforts he had destroyed several of the markers which had been discovered earlier. Later several wealthy men formed Triton Alliance, Ltd. This group, which is interested in history and archaeology, has discovered a number of artifacts that have been carbon-dated or otherwise identified as being from a period before 1790. Most of Triton's work has consisted of drilling. In 1976 there was a movement of tons of earth against the side of the casing around a hole in which a man was working. He just barely escaped before the casing collapsed. Thus far the secret of the Money Pit has not been found nor has the treasure. Scattered throughout the book are chapters in which the author tries to answer the questions about who could have hidden treasure on Oak Island and constructed such elaborate means of protecting it. He proves several theories to be without basis, though many are intriguing.

O'Connor has done a thorough job of research in order to write his book, which is well organized and well presented. The account is suspenseful and maintains one's interest to the end. Young people have enjoyed reading it.

Book talk incidents are abundant. Try one of the following: the discovery of the artificial beach, pages 33–36; interesting finds made during the search in 1802–4, pages 22–27; and Gilbert Hedden's search, pages 111–26.

The Treasure of the Concepción by Peter Earle is a well-researched history of the treasure-laden Spanish ship, the *Nuestra Senora de la Concepción*, which was wrecked on a reef some eighty miles off the coast of the Dominican Republic in 1641 and of the salvage operations done on her by the Spanish, English, and Americans. *Pieces of Eight* by Kip Wagner is another good story of a search for lost treasure. The author, who managed to find where a Spanish treasure fleet sank during a hurricane in 1715, describes some of the divers' experiences and discoveries. Also suggest *The Tomb of Tutankhamen* by Harold Carter in which he tells of the tomb's discovery, the problems encountered in its excavation, and the contents of the tomb's chambers.

PATON, ALAN

Cry, the Beloved Country

1948. Scribner.

"These hills are grass-covered and rolling, and they are lovely beyond any singing of it . . . ." A native preacher from these hills of South Africa, the Reverend Stephen Kumalo, is called to Johannesburg to rescue his sister who has fallen into evil ways. As his brother John and his only son Absalom have also gone to the city and have not been heard from, he decides to use the money saved for his son's education to seek them out. He finds his sister who has become a

prostitute; she promises to return to their village with him. His brother has prospered, but his son Absalom has joined a group of young delinquents and has left a trail of misdemeanors. He has even served a term in a reformatory. Here he had been a model prisoner, becoming a friend of the white social worker who found work for him and made arrangements for him to marry the girl who was expecting his child. Just as he seems to have reformed, Absalom disappears. Shortly after this, Arthur Jarvis, a young white attorney whose interest and sympathies are with the natives, is shot to death in his home. The police accuse Absalom of the crime, and he confesses to firing the shot—not from malice but from fear. Although a famous lawyer defends the boy, Absalom must hang for his crime. Ironically, Reverend Kumalo is aided by the white man's father, who is finally beginning to embrace the views of his murdered son, becoming sympathetic toward the natives and particularly toward the burdened minister. Reverend Kumalo offers to give up his pulpit, but his congregation, knowing his true goodness, will not allow it. The elder Mr. Jarvis helps the natives, whose hunger and suffering are caused by drought, by furnishing milk and food from his farm. He also promises to promote the construction of a dam which will prevent future water shortages; he plans to help train the farmers in new methods; he even promises a new church building for Reverend Kumalo. Thus his son's ideals and plans are to be carried out in spite of his untimely death.

The first appeal of this book is the singing rhythm of its almost biblical prose by which the reader progresses to comprehension of the forces at work in South Africa. The story it tells is a classic tragedy. Mature readers appreciate the author's sensitivity to human feelings and emotions, the depth of the story, and the well-portrayed characters.

For book talks use the second chapter almost word for word, deleting the few sentences unnecessary for telling. This will establish the problem. Or use the conversation between the condemned son and his preacher father, pages 204–8, or the scene in which the white father reads his dead son's article on understanding South Africa, pages 173–76.

Maxwell Anderson did a very effective dramatization of Paton's book entitled *Lost in the Stars,* which some young people deeply touched by the book will like reading. Paton was at one time principal of a reformatory for six hundred delinquent boys. Five of the nine stories in *Tales from a Troubled Land* are concerned with boys with whom he came in contact. Each tale shows the author's deep compassion for the black people of South Africa. Also recommend *Towards the Mountain,* Paton's splendid story of his life through 1948, when *Cry, the Beloved Country* was published. The readers will watch with interest the gradual development in Paton of his belief in the equality of men no matter what their race.

POTOK, CHAIM

The Chosen

1967. Simon & Schuster.

Reuven Malter and Danny Saunders had lived within five blocks of one another for fifteen years but had never met until their baseball teams played against one another. Reuven's team was overconfident because their opponents were so inept in the field. Danny always hit right at the pitcher and, during the game, because Reuven was off balance and unable to dodge Danny's hit, the ball caught him on the left side of the head, breaking his glasses. After the game the coach took Reuven to the hospital where it was discovered he had a slight concussion and glass in his eye. After the operation Reuven did not know whether scar tissue would form and blind him. He hated Danny for it and when the boy came to see him, was so nasty that Danny left. But the next day he was back. This time Reuven was civil and the two boys had a heart-to-heart talk about the game, their feelings, and their plans for the future. Danny, whose father belonged to a very strict Hasidic sect, attended a strict Hebrew school. When Danny came again the following day, Reuven learned how much Danny liked to read and that a man at the library was helping him find worthwhile books. Mr. Malter came to visit before Danny left and the boy was surprised to learn that Reuven's father was the man he knew at the library. At the end of the week Reuven left the hospital. He had great respect for his father with whom he had a very close relationship. Mr. Malter explained how the Hasidic phase of Judaism had developed so that Reuven would understand why Danny must succeed his father as rabbi. Danny took Reuven to the synagogue so he could meet his father. On later visits the boys discussed passages from the Talmud with Danny's father. Reuven could not understand why Danny and his father were unable to talk with one another as he and his father did. One day Danny met Reuven at the public library and told his friend he was teaching himself German so that he could read Freud in the original. He was very much interested in psychology. As soon as school was out in the spring the two boys spent much time together until Reuven and his father went away on vacation. During his senior year Reuven was so busy at school, he seldom saw Danny. The next fall when both boys started college, Reuven was excited but Danny was miserable. World War II had ended and Mr. Malter was working very hard for the Zionist movement. Reb Saunders, who opposed Zionism fiercely, forbade Danny to see Reuven again; so for two years the boys did not speak. When Israel became a nation and was fighting the Arabs for its existence, the resistance of the Hasidic Jews dried up and Reb Saunders told Danny he could resume his friendship with Reuven. Danny had decided to abandon his inherited role as the leader of his sect and instead get his doctorate in clinical psychology.

Reuven, who had always wanted to be a rabbi, continued toward that goal.

The characters of the two sons and the two fathers are very sensitively developed and the story is very moving. Young people – boys and girls, Jewish and Gentile – regard the book as a powerful novel.

The beginning of the boys' friendship might be used as a book talk, pages 54–55, 66–67, 68–77.

Reuven's and Danny's story continues in *The Promise* with the boys in college. Both undergo severe testing times when it seems that they may not survive the challenges they meet. The excellent book *My Name is Asher Lev* by Potok should also be suggested. It concerns a Jewish boy who showed a remarkable talent for drawing when he was only four years of age. Asher's father came to disapprove of the boy's obsession with drawing, but his mother and the Rebbe (the leader of their community and synagogue) encouraged him. Before Asher was twenty, he had his first private showing and the critics were kind. After graduating from college he studied abroad. His choice of subjects for his paintings offended his parents and Jewish friends who could not understand their significance nor reconcile them with the history and beliefs of the Jewish people. The reader's sympathy goes out to all those involved in the story. At the suggestion of a Jewish teenager, Harry Kemelman's mysteries are added as possible follow-ups. They do contain some information about the customs and beliefs of the Jewish people although they are very different in story content. In *Friday the Rabbi Slept Late*, young Rabbi David Small, accustomed to the complex methods of reasoning used in the study of the Talmud, is able to see several sides of a question. When a woman's body is found on the temple grounds, the rabbi helps the chief of police in the investigation and reasons out the solution to the murder. In *Saturday the Rabbi Went Hungry* Rabbi Small uncovers a murder when police had determined a man's death to have been accidental, with no other person involved. The librarian might also consider the other books in this series.

READ, PIERS PAUL

Alive: The Story of the Andes Survivors

1974. Lippincott.

In October, 1972, a rugby team from Montevideo, Uruguay, accompanied by friends and relatives and a few people with other interests in Chile set out for Santiago in an Air Force plane with five crewmen. When they became lost in the clouds over the Andes, the plane hit a mountain, losing wings and tail and coming to rest in a valley of snow. Some people were killed, others were seriously injured, while some were able to get about to assess the situation and aid those caught in the wreckage. Without adequate clothing, medical supplies, warm shelter, or real food, their chance for survival was slim.

Although they rationed the snacks and wine they had brought and improvised shelter and clothing, it was soon apparent that they would all perish unless they ate the bodies of those who had been killed on impact or who had died of injuries. An avalanche which buried the plane later provided eight more corpses. The author describes the strengths and weaknesses of each survivor and his role, if any, in the struggle to remain alive. A team of the four strongest was chosen to try to get out of the mountains and bring about a rescue. Meanwhile the parents and friends were trying in several ways to locate the plane but the navigational error made in the cockpit and radioed before the crash took the searchers to the wrong area. The account alternates between the activities of the survivors and the rescue attempts. Finally when two men from the crashed plane reached a green valley and contacted Chilean peasants, the survivors were rescued by helicopters. Most of those who had lived through the seventy-odd days in the mountains felt exalted by the experience – their religious faith had been strengthened and their friendships had deepened. Several had developed stronger characters and leadership qualities. On the other hand they showed signs of having suffered psychologically.

Read presents a very graphic picture of the physical and emotional experiences of those who lived through the crash and the efforts required for survival. Some showed unbelievable courage and endurance; some were reluctant to eat human flesh and grew weaker. Others were able to justify by a religious analogy the eating of their friends. Some seemed to become callous to the cutting up of the bodies, treating them more like animal carcasses. In these descriptions only mature readers can cope with the use of the bodies for food. Young people have liked the book.

A brief summary of the crash and the conditions in which the survivors found themselves will serve to interest readers in a book talk.

When Lauren Elder flew with a pilot and his girl friend over the high Sierras, the small plane hit near the top of the mountain pass and all were injured. In *And I Alone Survived* she tells of the difficulties of climbing to the top of the pass and down the rugged terrain on the other side, eventually reaching a small desert town. Peter Gzowshi in *The Sacrament* describes what happened to the four persons involved in the crash of a small plane in the mountains of Idaho in 1979. A teenage girl and a young man survived in spite of severe injuries and after two weeks in the wreckage managed to reach the nearest mining camp. Another true story of survival that can be suggested is told by Joan and Clay Blair in *Return from the River Kwai.* The men as prisoners of war had survived incredible hardships while helping to build the Japanese railroad through the jungles of Burma and Thailand, only to be loaded aboard freighters to go to work in Japan. Their unmarked ships were sunk by American sub-

marines and only a few of the prisoners lived through the excruciating days on wreckage or in lifeboats before they were rescued by chance by the same submarines. In 1943 Jan Baalsrud, a Norwegian saboteur trained in England, eluded the Germans to whom he had been betrayed and survived almost unbelievable misfortunes before he could be smuggled into Sweden and safety. David Howarth relates this true story in *We Die Alone.*

RENAULT, MARY

The King Must Die

1958. Pantheon.

Theseus, the hero and narrator, tells about his grandfather who was king of Troizen and his mother, the king's only daughter. It was said that Theseus had been fathered by a god but some people doubted this. The boy's ancestors had been Hellenes and his mother was chief priestess of Mother Dia. Poseidon, husband and lord of the goddess, was Theseus' patron and for three years the lad served at the god's shrine one month of every four. One night he decided to test Poseidon's interest in him by swimming straight out to sea. If he were Poseidon's son, the god would save him and he did. On Theseus' seventeenth birthday his mother told him how he could learn his father's name, but he was not strong enough to raise the rock under which the secret was buried. Later he listened to a bard who came to his grandfather's court and learned about the use of hoists and levers. Thus Theseus recovered a beautifully decorated sword which had belonged to his father, who, he learned, was Aigeus, king of Athens. When he found out the circumstances of his conception, he decided to go the Athens to see his father. When he was passing through Eleusis, he was greeted by its queen who informed him that he had been chosen to wrestle with the present king and kill him. As the boy was not yet nineteen, it was not an easy task, but he did it. After he had been blood-cleansed, he wed the queen and found her a very competent woman in bed. He also learned that the women of Eleusis were the rulers of the house and the queen did all the business of the kingdom. Theseus decided he preferred to have the power and before his year as king was up, he had it. He often went to visit his father in Athens and on one visit when King Minos demanded his annual tribute of fourteen boys and girls who were to become bull dancers in Crete, Theseus volunteered to be one of them, believing that Poseidon wished him to go. Much of the story deals with the experiences of these young people in Crete. Theseus convinced them that only as they worked closely together would all survive; he was right. The three seasons that they spent in the Bull Court are probably the most interesting in the whole book. Although they were slaves, they were trained well and properly fed and housed. They were also sought after as guests and as lovers by the men and women

of the court of Minos. Eventually Theseus was procured by the young woman, Ariadne, known as the Holy One, the Goddess-on-Earth, and they became lovers. The house of Minos had Hellene blood and had subjugated the Cretans who, Theseus learned, were quietly talking of rebellion. He planned to lead an uprising and when he did, he was helped by Poseidon who caused several earthquakes, by all the young people from the bullring who had gradually collected weapons, by Ariadne, and by the Cretans.

Mary Renault is expert in describing the elaborate rituals used in worshiping the Greek deities, the consummate skill of the bull dancers, the fabulous palace at Knossos, and the highly sensuous and sophisticated customs of those in the royal courts. The interest in Theseus' story never lags as he faces one adventure after another. In this book the reader gains a new insight into the past.

For a book talk use the occasion when Theseus seeks a sign from Poseidon, pages 27–28, or when, at the age of seventeen, his mother and his grandfather tell him of his conception, pages 32–52.

Also suggest the sequel, *The Bull from the Sea*, in which Theseus returns from Crete after slaying the Minotaur and assumes the crown of Greece when his father dies. In Renault's *The Praise Singer*, Simonides, a renowned poet and singer of sixth-century Greece, recalls the main events of his life, thereby presenting a clear, vivid picture of the age of tyrants, its social life and festivals, and the importance of the arts during that period in time. Another book which can be suggested is *Last Days of Pompeii* by Edward Bulwer-Lytton. Glaucus, a young Greek, was in love with Ione, a Greek girl and ward of Arbaces, an Egyptian priest of Isis. Arbaces prepared a drug and gave it to Glaucus. As a result of the drug Glaucus killed Ione's brother and was condemned to die. The eruption at Pompeii is really what saved him.

ROBERTS, KENNETH

Arundel

1930. Doubleday.

Steven Nason was twelve when a visitor, little Mary Mallison, kissed him and set his heart flopping in his chest. When she asked if he would marry her, he could only pant "Yes! Yes!" Steven's father owned a garrison house at the mouth of the Arundel River and had a license to operate an inn and a bar. That day a stranger had come to the inn who appeared disdainful of the militiamen and the neighbors who stopped in for a drink. He was so insulting that Cap Huff, another visitor, threw him out into the mud left when the tide went out. The next day Mary and her father left. In the afternoon a friendly Abenaki brought word that Mallison had been killed by Indians who were with a white man and they had carried Mary off. Taking Steven with him, Mr. Nason immediately set out after the

murderers. For years Nason had traded with the Indians fairly and they trusted him. He knew the killers must be northern Indians and the white man, French. The author describes the travels of Steven and his father, their stopping at an Indian village where Nason was well known, and continuing on by canoe with two paddlers who knew some shortcuts. They were not successful in rescuing Mary, although they almost caught her captors. The white man who was Henri Guerlac was wounded and Steven was hurt quite badly. Steven never forgot Mary. Over the years he learned that she had been taken to Quebec, had been educated in a convent, lived in Guerlac's luxurious home, and had grown into a beautiful young lady. When the American Revolution began, Steven joined Colonel Benedict Arnold when he took an army north to try to capture Quebec. Arnold had been given much bad advice and although he liked Steven, he would not listen to him because he trusted the information he had received. The account of the army's journey through the wilds of Maine is long and detailed but holds the reader's interest because it describes the tremendous difficulties Arnold's forces encountered. Many men died on the way, some turned back to the colonies, but eventually a good number reached the banks of the St. Lawrence. The attack on Quebec finally took place in a blizzard on New Year's Day. Arnold was wounded in the Lower Town and General Montgomery, who was attacking from the other side, was killed at the start. With their leaders gone, the invading soldiers were in disarray, unsure of what next to do in that complicated city and fortress; as a result, many were taken prisoner. Steven, Cap, and three Indians reached Guerlac's home and confronted Mary, only to find that she considered Steven a savage and was not the least interested in going off with him. Fortunately there was another girl, Phoebe Marvin, with whom he had been friends for many years and who had, strangely enough, been captain of his sloop, who would make Steven a very good wife.

Steven tells the story because he feels that people did not appreciate the kind of leader that Colonel Arnold was and he felt that Arnold had been treated unfairly by the people of the colonies. He does not condone Arnold's joining the British but he understands the reasons for it. The book is long and complex and the foregoing annotation can only hint at the action. Much of the story involves the area in Maine for which the Indians have in recent years gone to court in an effort to regain possession of 300,000 acres that once had belonged to them. Reference is made several times by Indians in the book to the whites forcing them off their lands.

A book talk can be built around the hunt for Mary and her captors, pages 55–64.

Rabble-in-Arms by Roberts continues the story of the Revolution; in this account the main characters among the people from Arundel are Peter and Nathaniel Merrill. The action mainly takes place

around Lake Champlain. Mary, who had taken the name of her benefactor, was known as Marie de Sabrevois, is an important character in this account. After tremendous hardships which handicapped the Americans, they defeated the British in the battle of Saratoga. Steven Nason and Cap Huff are again involved with Colonel Arnold. Those interested in other books on this period can read *Drums Along the Mohawk* by Walter Edmonds which tells what happened to those on the western frontier in New York State when many of the men had to go East to join the American army, leaving the women and children with little protection from the Indians. *Guns for Rebellion* by Van Wyck Mason mostly concerns the terrible difficulties encountered by the men from Colonel Knox's army who had to transport the big guns captured at Fort Ticonderoga more than three hundred miles through the trackless wilderness to the eastern front. Another classic novel of early days in America is *The Tree of Liberty* by Elizabeth Page. It presents three generations of the Howard family which was split over important issues arising from the American Revolution and the founding of the nation but who were devoted to one another despite their differences. Had it still been in print, Catherine Drinker Bowen's *John Adams and the American Revolution* would have been a main entry. It is an important book providing an excellent picture of the years 1745–1776 as seen through the eyes of the young lawyer, John Adams. Adams believed that the trauma which beset the colonies in the difficulties with England and with each other prior to 1776 constituted the Revolution and that the war itself was the aftermath. Adams, one of the men sent by Massachusetts to Philadelphia to work out the colonies' problems, made a name for himself among the representatives there. Bowen includes considerable information about John's wife, Abigail, and their relationship. Young persons should certainly be introduced to those on the Loyalist side during the American Revolution. In *Oliver Wiswell* by Kenneth Roberts, the main character is a young Loyalist, a student at Yale University in 1775. Shortly after Oliver was called home because of his father's illness, the rebels gave the Wiswells one-half hour to get out of town. This was the beginning of eight years of disappointment and hardship. At the end of the war Oliver and the girl who had waited for him found a new home with hundreds of other Loyalists in unsettled territory in eastern Canada. The reader gains a real understanding of why the Loyalists considered the rebels to be rabble.

RÖLVAAG, OLE EDVART

Giants in the Earth

1927. Harper.

With his head full of dreams for the future, Per Hansa moved his wife Beret and their three children—Ole, Anne Marie, and Hans

Kristian—from Minnesota to Dakota Territory and staked out his claim near the land of Hans Olsa at Spring Creek. Strong and resourceful, he worked against overwhelming odds to establish a home for his family. A man of many moods and enthusiasms, he worked from before dawn until after dark, cultivating the land and building his sod house. Beret, uprooted from her native Norway, found the prairie lonely, bleak, and savage. She was haunted by a nameless dread of the relentless elements around her and could not understand the pleasure that her husband and children took in this rugged country. Her chief preoccupation was to escape from this terrible land. When the Indians came and camped nearby, Per Hansa had the courage to visit them. There he discovered an Indian with blood poisoning whom he was able to help, although Beret protested and was afraid. That summer he destroyed some markers put down earlier on his neighbors' lands by Irish settlers. When Beret discovered the deception, she was haunted by the deed. Later it turned out that the Irish had never filed their claims and had no right to the land, but still Beret found it hard to forgive Per Hansa for his transgression. As the seasons passed, Per Hansa had to fight all the natural elements of this raw, wild land: snow and wind, cold and rain, and plagues of marauding grasshoppers. Yet he always seemed to come out on top and because of his resourcefulness was usually ahead of his neighbors in any undertaking. Beret grew queer as time went on and was obsessed with the idea that evil controlled their lives. When Hans Olsa was dying, she insisted that her husband go out into a blizzard to get a minister. This was Per Hansa's final struggle with the harsh elements of the prairie, for he was destined not to return.

Per Hansa typifies the hardy settler who exulted in hardships and the struggle with the soil. Beret, on the other hand, symbolizes the brooding melancholy of many of the pioneer women who had to brave danger and desolation to make homes for their families. Although this is a bitter and realistic story, the human spirit always triumphs, and the sacrifices of the early settlers have never been told more vividly. Mature readers appreciate this "saga of the prairie."

There are many scenes worth reading or telling: the description of the building of the sod house, pages 49–55; the care of the sick Indian, pages 76–85; Per Hansa's struggle with a blizzard, pages 262–75; and the plague of grasshoppers, pages 341–44.

Also suggest *The Emigrants* by Vilhelm Moberg in which Karl Oskar Milsa, unable to support his family, care for his aging parents, or pay off his mortgage with the income from his very small piece of stony land in Sweden, decided to sell out and move to the United States. The account of the voyage is told in detail with all its sickness, starvation, crowding, and death. In Moberg's *Unto a Good Land* Karl Oskar, determined to settle in Minnesota, saw the small sum of money he had received from the sale of the farm in Sweden dwindle to pay for transportation across the Atlantic and for a river-

boat, steam train, lake boat, and another riverboat in America. By the time the family had reached the territory of Minnesota, he did not have enough money left to pay for the bare necessities in food for the long, cold winter ahead. *Peder Victorious* by Rölvaag can also be recommended. It continues the story of Per Hansa's family. Peder, the youngest son and dearest to his mother, Beret, grows up, finishes school, takes over the farm after his brothers marry and move away, and falls in love. The community changes greatly in those years.

ROSTAND, EDMOND

Cyrano de Bergerac: a new version in English verse by Brian Hooker

1923. Holt.

The nose of the famous French guardsman, Cyrano de Bergerac, was of such amazingly heroic proportions that the man's very behavior was shaped and directed by it. His courage, which seemed almost foolhardy, and his ability to compose poetry even during a duel more than compensated for his ugliness. Cyrano was not a man to be taunted or disparaged without dire consequences. Beneath the braggadocio and swaggering courage, however, lay a sensitive soul yearning for but one prize—the love of the beautiful Roxanne. Her exquisite features, so much a contrast to his, made Cyrano despair that she could ever care for one so gross. He nurtured his devotion deep beneath his gruff soldier's exterior until a meeting planned at her request brought him to the point of hoping that she might actually care for him. Unfortunately, her purpose was to plead for his protection of a young popinjay named Christian, with whom she fancied herself in love. All the guardsmen were Gascons, and they were accustomed to making life miserable for an outsider like Christian. Cyrano promised to look out for the young soldier and, discovering that Christian loved Roxanne and was unable to put his feelings into words, Cyrano agreed to write his love letters for him. Because of their beauty and emotional presentation, Roxanne fell deeply in love with the image they created, and Cyrano was forced to see another man win the prize he coveted. Roxanne and Christian were married following a scene in which the concealed Cyrano spoke for the inarticulate Christian, and not five minutes after the wedding the guardsmen were ordered immediately to the front. Cyrano promised to look after Christian and to see that he wrote his young wife every day. Cyrano kept his promise as well as he could, and when Christian was killed during an attack, Cyrano kept his secret. Roxanne went into deep mourning and entered a life of seclusion without realizing that she loved Cyrano rather than the dead boy. During her long years of isolation, Cyrano visited her regularly. Only after a mortal injury and at the point of death did he acciden-

tally reveal his feeling by reciting Christian's last love letter, so faded that the writer alone could have known the contents. Too late, Roxanne realized that she loved Cyrano, but the old soldier died happy in the knowledge that his devotion had triumphed over his ugly face. Consistent to his ideals, he met death on his feet with his sword in his hand.

This drama set in seventeenth-century Paris is full of the court intrigue of the time, and the classic love story enlivened with the hero's comic, impulsive escapades appeals to both boys and girls. The plot may seem exaggerated, but the dramatic presentation and reality of the characters make "suspension of disbelief" easy.

A description of the first scene, in which Cyrano composes a sonnet during the duel, and a mention of his plan to become ghost writer for Christian could introduce the story without spoiling the surprise ending.

The excitement of this period in French history can be continued in Dumas' *The Three Musketeers.* * Another poignant love story, not in play form, in which a couple discover their love too late and are deprived of what could have been happy years is told in *An Iceland Fisherman* by Pierre Loti.

ROTHENBERG, MIRA

Children with Emerald Eyes: Histories of Extraordinary Boys and Girls

1977. Dial.

Because she could speak Yiddish and some Eastern European languages, Mira Rothenberg was assigned to a classroom with thirty-two hungry, angry, bitter children, remnants from concentration camps in World War II. She was supposed to teach them history, reading, writing, and arithmetic as well as civilize them. She made no progress until she told them about American Indians who were refugees in their own country. This the young people could understand and they all became Indians; they made tepees, canoes, and animals. She told them numerous stories about Indian kindness, pride, bravery, devotion, and love for animals. They learned Indian crafts and sold them; they also wrote Indian stories and poetry. Mira was with them for two-and-a-half years before she went back to Columbia University. By that time the class was even or above their grade level in every subject. Her next assignment was as the first woman teacher in an institution for delinquent children where she remained for a year, working successfully with boys eight to eleven years of age in the morning and boys sixteen to eighteen in the afternoon. One summer she took over the older girls. She tells about her experiences with each group and how she managed to reach them. Three years later she was asked by two psychiatrists if she

would be willing to work with an emotionally disturbed, deaf and dumb, six-year-old boy. On her first meeting with the child, she decided the diagnosis of deafness was not accurate and proved that little Jonny could hear. She tells of his steady progress when he learned he could trust her. After she had worked with him for three years, he had improved immeasurably; although he still did not talk, he did occasionally say words. Anthony came to her with a controversial diagnosis: mental retardation, brain damage, childhood schizophrenia, autism, and juvenile delinquency. Today that boy has grown into a fine young man, with a good job, a good wife, and a beautiful child, a testimony to the fact that love, patience, and intelligent handling can win. Although not all her patients turned out so well, Mira has made a great difference in the lives of many children. She refused to accept the children as they appeared to be, seeing them as able to overcome their supposed handicaps, which, with her help, many did. As a result of her success the Blueberry Treatment Center was set up. It started as a summer camp for schizophrenic and autistic children and developed into a day treatment center, a residence for children who cannot stay at home, and a village for adolescents who cannot function in ordinary society. She tells the stories of many more children with whom she worked.

Mira Rothenberg's vision shines through her words. At first one wonders how she could love some of the ugly, misshapen, abnormal children who came to her. Then the reader realizes that when she looked at her patients, she saw past the outward appearance to what the children really were. She is guilty of repeating herself at times in consecutive paragraphs when it is unnecessary but generally her story is so inspiring that the reader overlooks the fact that the writing should have been tightened. She makes the reader feel the children's terror and emotional trauma.

Anthony's story would make a good book talk, pages 33–64.

In *One Child* Torey Haydon writes of her experience teaching a class of twelve mentally disturbed children and especially of Sheila, a little six-year-old who had been put into Torey's class until the state hospital to which she had been committed had room for her. With Torey's help Sheila made such a good adjustment that she could go into a class of normal children the next year. Another true account is *Dibs* written by Virginia Axline, a clinical psychologist, who agrees to work with a mentally retarded, brain damaged, or emotionally disturbed child in the Play Therapy Room each Thursday and eventually discovers in the child a very gifted little boy. *A Child Called Noah* by Josh Greenfeld is different from those above in that this book presents the autistic, schizophrenic child from the parents' point of view and one realizes what it is like to be with such a child twenty-four hours a day. Using the same format Greenfeld continues his description of his autistic son's progress in learning in *A Place for Noah*.

ROYAL, WILLIAM M., WITH ROBERT F. BURGESS

The Man Who Rode the Sharks

1978. Dodd, Mead

Bill Royal encountered his first shark during the Depression when he helped feed his family with fish he caught near Bradenton Beach in Florida. In the early 1950s he was assigned to Johnson Island United States Air Force Base in the Pacific as civil engineer. Rather than die of boredom or alcoholism, Royal took up diving with fins, mask, and a homemade speargun. A half-Hawaiian civilian on the island gave him his first lessons in diving and warned him about some of the dangerous creatures he could meet under water. To satisfy his curiosity about the denizens of deeper water he soon acquired scuba equipment and a larger, more powerful speargun. One day scientists came to the island to resume their study of local fish poisoning. Royal and some of his diving friends were asked to gather specimens for them, particularly sharks and moray eels; as a result of this project, Royal and the other divers had numerous exciting adventures. In 1954 Royal was sent to Turkey as civil engineer in connection with the establishment of radar sites on new NATO bases. During his time off he dived in an area where the sharks were thought to be maneaters, but found that they deliberately avoided him. In 1958 he left the Air Force and retired to Florida. Here he began to look for fossil shark teeth and then to catch sharks for Dr. Eugenie Clark, director of the Cape Haze Marine Laboratory. When this work was finished, he went back to his search for shark teeth and while exploring the ocean floor off Venice, Florida, discovered the fossil remains of a mastodon. The area he found turned out to be a prehistoric graveyard which might be likened to the La Brea Tar Pits near Los Angeles. Although now under water, it had at one time been a swamp when the level of the ocean had been lower. Radiocarbon dates some of his finds to be over 36,000 years old. He also dived in Warm Mineral Springs, which is part of a health spa. When he found what he thought were valuable clues to the ancient history of Florida, learned scientists ridiculed his ideas and would not even come to look at what he had found. However, he continued to explore the springs for years and tells about the many things he found. It took seventeen years before the scientists finally acknowledged that Royal had made a very important discovery. At the end of his book he says his story is not yet finished.

This is a book with appeal for young people interested in diving as well as for those who enjoy a story of courage and excitement. Royal also shows that one need not be bored anywhere; one has only to look about to find a healthy and pleasurable outlet for one's energies.

Any one of the following incidents could be used in a book talk: an early experience with an attacking shark off Johnson Island, pages 3–5; his first encounter with a shark, pages 9–13; a moray eel attacks

him, pages 52–53; a struggle with a shark while his little son watches from an inner tube, pages 93–96; on a dive at Warm Mineral Springs when everything goes wrong and Royal almost dies as a result, pages 223–37.

Jacques Cousteau who has studied dolphins for a number of years relates his own experiences and those of his crew and others in *Dolphins*. While his research has been in the sea with free dolphins, other people have worked with these mammals in tanks and aquariums. Generously illustrated with color photographs, *The Memoirs of Falco: Chief Diver of the "Calypso"* by Philippe Diole and Albert Falco tells of experiments in diving to great depths, living on the sea bottom, using helium for breathing under water, and exploring in the Antarctic.

RUSSELL, ANDY

Andy Russell's Adventures with Wild Animals

1977. Knopf.

Andy Russell has lived most of his life in the Canadian Rockies and is greatly interested in the animals of the area. He has spent many hours observing them at close range and with high-powered binoculars. Here he combines his observations and his knowledge of animal habits into seven stories, each about a different species. Sage was the only survivor when his mother and twin sister were killed by a hunter who had been hired to rid the area of bears which had been feeding on cattle in the mountain valleys for the summer. He lived to be a fine old bear who occasionally visited the author's ranch. King Elk was a magnificent creature the author saw frequently as the elk was growing up. Later King became the leader of a large harem. Russell can only surmise what finally happened to him during an unusually severe winter when many elk, weighed down by ice on their legs and bellies, died in the deep snow. Misty, a very intelligent coyote, had learned about poisoned meat and carefully taught her pups never to touch meat they did not kill themselves. After her litter was old enough to leave the family, the female, driven by hunger during the winter, ate poisoned meat and suffered an agonizing death. One day when Russell was guiding some guests on a fishing expedition, he spotted three goats on the side of a nearby mountain. When the fishermen no longer needed him, he put on his climbing boots and set out up the mountain toward the goats. His experience makes the reader appreciate the agility and intelligence of these intrepid animals. Next Russell tells about the travels of a pair of otters and later of their family, describing their search for food, the fun they had sliding over small waterfalls and down slippery rocks, and their ability to fight successfully against enemies larger than themselves. The cougar in the next story at one time had been captured for a movie sequence. When it was put into a pen with a doe, the

cameramen expected to photograph the kill. They did not know that the doe once had been a family pet and had grown up with dogs and she had learned to dominate. Instead of the cougar making an easy kill, the doe charged the big cat, who got the worst of the deal. In the final story Russell recounts his family's experiences raising a great horned owl.

Russell's stories are very well written and contain poetic descriptions of vistas, sunsets, dawns, lakes, and mountains as well as of animals. He believes in finding a way to live with wild creatures rather than eliminating them and several of his stories include men who feel as he does.

Any of the following incidents can be used in a book talk. The Russell children have an experience with Sage, pages 31–34. King gets a wound as a calf that makes him easy to identify later, pages 55–56. Klea, the cougar, was angry because he had been defeated by a larger, more experienced male and forgetting his training killed a porcupine. His infected paw led to his capture, pages 144–52.

Mike Tomkies who lived at a lonely outpost at the end of a lake in the Scottish highlands was given two wildcat kittens to raise. In *My Wilderness Wildcats* he says Cleo and Patra were never tame but with his Alsatian, Moobli, he was able to care for them. He has also included much information about the flora and fauna of his area. In the summer of 1959 when Robert Leslie visited the grave of Sacajawea in Wyoming, he met the Shoshone shaman, Marcos Eagle Rock, who told him that the colony of pikas in the Green River Lakes area near Square Top Mountain needed help with gathering and storing their fodder for the coming winter. An early frost was expected before they could finish their harvest. When Leslie agreed to go, he had no idea that the time he spent with these intelligent little animals would be one of the highlights of his experiences in the wilds. His book is *Miracle at Square Top Mountain*. When Kay Turner started her life in the Serengeti, she was determined to prove to her husband that a woman need not complain about the dust, the heat, and the loneliness. She went with Myles on patrol and has packed her book, *Serengeti Home*, with episodes about the animals and people they encountered.

SANDOZ, MARI

Miss Morissa

1955. Hastings House.

As the story opens, Dr. Morissa Kirk, having been spurned by her husband-to-be when he learned that she was illegitimate, is on a stagecoach near the end of her journey to join her stepfather, Robin Thomas, on the south shore of the North Platte River in Nebraska Territory. Robin was a boss grader helping to build a bridge across the river. Gold has been found in the Black Hills near Deadwood

and, although it was illegal for white men to go into land which the government had guaranteed to the Indians, many people were headed that way. The bridge would save them many miles of travel. Morissa's introduction to the community as a doctor took place as soon as she arrived. She used artificial respiration on a sick man pulled from the flooded river and left on the bank by the cowboys who knew nothing about restoring life to a victim of drowning. Morissa fixed up Robin's one-room sod hut and hung out a sign saying "Dr. Kirk." Immediately she found herself busy with patients. The author weaves into the story many of the calls for help that came, many of which are exciting because Morissa went out in spite of bad weather, sometimes running into danger herself. She received invitations to observe or take part in all special events, parties, and celebrations in the area. Tris Polk, a well-to-do young rancher seriously interested in her, often escorted her. When she filed on a homestead and preemption across the bridge, she was the first settler to build north of the river. She had a garden, some chickens, and the cows she received in payment for medical aid. The cattlemen did not approve of her fencing and irrigation. Cases of diphtheria and typhoid were often reported, bandits were busy on the road to Deadwood, the Indians went on the warpath, other settlers took up land on the same side of the river, and the cowboys permitted the cattle to break down fences. Tris asked Morissa to marry him and when she accepted, a date was set. Eddie Ellis, a friend of Robin's son Jack, had come down with typhoid, so Morissa had taken him into her hospital where he acted like a spoiled child, jealous if Morissa gave some other patient special attention. She indulged him but when the wedding date drew close, she insisted that he leave and took him to Sidney. Tris met her at the hotel and they went to the courthouse where she was to testify. They observed the trial of a settler who had killed a cowboy when he tried to destroy the settler's shack. The ranchers and cowboys favored hanging the man but Morissa defended the settler. She became so angry with Tris that on the rebound she married Eddie that night. Later Eddie was said to be working with holdup men and horse thieves; also he gambled, ran up bills for her to pay, and forged checks. Meanwhile Morissa built a new enlarged hospital and living quarters. One night when Eddie was angry with Morissa, he set fire to the hospital and was shot by a cowboy patient. The building was a total loss, but the staff and patients were saved. Almost immediately the community collected funds to help Morissa rebuild. Although she had offers to practice elsewhere, she mortgaged her land to build another hospital. As the story ends, the reader wonders if she will ever marry Tris, who is still available.

There is so much action in the story that it cannot help but fascinate readers. Sandoz writes very well, bringing the frontier to life and presenting vivid characters, both famous and fictional.

There are numerous episodes for book talks, a few of which are: Morissa helps to save the man who had apparently drowned, pages 4–7; she receives a beautiful Appaloosa for treating an Indian's small son, pages 36–38; she saves the life of Sid Martin, a ranch owner, whose neck was broken when his horses threw him, pages 45–49; the stagecoach which had been held up thunders up to Morissa's door one day with the driver and guard badly hurt and four of the five passengers wounded, pages 89–91.

Two other well-known stories about the ill-feeling between ranchers and farmers in the early days are *A Sea of Grass* by Conrad Richter and *Shane* by Jack Schaefer. Another story of the West is Willa Cather's *My Antonia*. When orphaned Jim Burden was going by train to live with his grandparents on a farm in Nebraska, he met Antonia and her immigrant family which was about to settle in the same area. The young people grew up together and although they traveled different paths as adults, they remained friends all their lives. A book with a more recent background but with a story line somewhat similar to *Miss Morissa* is *Winter Wheat* by Mildred Walker. When the young man Ellen Webb loved broke their engagement and her father's wheat crop did not allow her to return to college, she became a teacher in a country school. Hours of loneliness gave her ample time to think, and matured by her experiences there, she came to recognize the real values in life.

SARTON, MAY

As We Are Now

1973. Norton.

When Caroline Spencer, a retired math teacher, was seventy-six, she had a heart attack and could no longer live alone in her little home because the stairs were too much for her. She moved in with her eighty-year-old brother and his wife for a short time but when the two women did not get along, she was placed in a very small country nursing home where she was the only woman among five or six vegetating old men. The place was operated in a slovenly manner, and the two women in charge were often hateful and neglectful of their charges. Caroline, who was somewhat forgetful, set to work to keep her mind as active and alert as she could by keeping a journal and reading. However, the women seemed determined to convince her she was more forgetful than she believed she was. When a local minister came to call, Caroline told him about conditions in the home, and as a result state inspectors came. This was resented by the manager who made life miserable for Caroline. The minister's daughter Lisa visited her, and Caroline was delighted with the girl. But at times the manager refused to let Lisa see the old lady. Gradually Caroline was overwhelmed by her hatred of the two women and began to lose interest in life. When the manager went on a vacation, a farmer's wife took over for two weeks. The place was immaculate

while Anna was there and the patients blossomed under her loving care. A special friendship developed between her and Caroline, which made things even worse when the manager returned and took over again. Caroline realized that she was starving to death for want of love. The minister could see what was happening and felt that Caroline should leave the home. But no other arrangements had been made when she decided that she could stand it no longer. She planned carefully how she would burn the home down and die in the fire and that is exactly what she did.

May Sarton is able by skillful writing to draw her readers into the story and make them feel the indignation and the despair of Caroline and the other intelligent patient, a fine old man, who was slowly dying in the next room. Several high school librarians and teachers recommended books on the subject of elderly people and spoke of the necessity for teenagers to be aware of the needs and problems of senior citizens who might well be members of their own families. The spirit, sense of humor, interest, and love of teenagers are so vital to older people.

Caroline's talk with the minister might be used as a book talk, pages 50–60.

The Plum Tree by Mary Ellen Chase is another small but very touching story and quite different from the title above. Emma Davis, a nurse, and Angeline Norton, the matron of the Home for Aged Women, for years had managed the home with love, kindness, and joy. Finally the minds of three of the old ladies in their eighties had deteriorated so much that they had to be transferred to the State Hospital for the Insane. Chase tells how Emma made the change of residence bearable for these old friends. Young people should be introduced to *Kinds of Love*, a happy story by Sarton. It tells of Willard, a small village in New Hampshire and of the people, mostly old, who live and love in it. The story includes a fifteen-year-old girl and her first love and the questions that puzzle her about life and the future. Another story of old age is *Simon's Night* by Jon Hassler. When Simon Shea at the age of seventy-six had a couple of momentary lapses of memory, he decided he should enter a residence for the elderly. Having been an outstanding college professor, he found the atmosphere of the home depressing and inhibiting. The young woman doctor who gave him the required physical examination recognized that Simon did not belong in such a residence. A better solution to Simon's living arrangements was worked out.

SCHECTER, LEONA AND JERROLD

An American Family in Moscow

1975. Little, Brown.

During the summer of 1968 before Jerrold Schecter moved his wife and five children to Moscow where he was to be bureau chief for *Time Magazine*, the family studied Russian. The children would be

enrolled in Russian schools and the whole family needed to be able to speak and understand the language. Because of the shortage of housing in Moscow, the family lived in a suite of hotel rooms at first. When they were assigned two apartments on the sixteenth floor of what Leona calls "a graceless labyrinth of cement boxes," Jerry immediately told the building engineers how he wanted the apartments combined and changed so that they would be more livable. The Russians seem to have no idea about comfort and convenience. To give a rounded picture of life in Russia, each member of the family wrote sections for the book. Thus the reader learns about schools and teachers, school uniforms and other clothing, food markets, money, meals, winter weather, sports, restaurants, difficulties in traveling, and servants. Jerry and Leona tell of many contacts with Russians and the difficulty in determining whether those who were friendly were genuinely so or only trying to get information or imports from America or perhaps misinform them. When Russians seemed genuinely friendly, care had to be taken in conversations because of listening devices on the telephone and in the office and apartment. The reader gets a good idea of the social life of the international community, some of its tensions, jokes, problems, suspicions, and pleasant times. The Schecters are Jewish and celebrated the various Jewish holidays, but they found that most of the Jews whom they met had discarded the old customs and seldom, if ever, went to the synagogue. They found growing hostility to the Jewish people whose opportunities and privileges were definitely restricted. News of problems in Russia did not get into the local media and if a newsman managed to send out such a news item and it appeared in print or on the air in a foreign country, the newsman was given forty-eight hours to leave Russia. Russia was having a great deal of trouble with its young people. They cheated and stole, overindulged in alcohol, dropped out of school, lacked discipline, and were lazy and arrogant. The older generation was discouraged about them and the government was having to crack down on them. The birth rate is very low as most women must work because income from both husband and wife is necessary for survival. People are dissatisfied with the way the state cares for children when the parents work, therefore they do not have children. Russians love children, however, and for these reasons the Schecters' were made much of by everyone who met them, strangers and friends.

The Schecters have written an engaging book that contains a great variety of information and is quite easy to read. The family is interesting from the youngest, Barney, up. This is a good introduction to other books by people in the foreign service.

There are many incidents that can be used for book talks. Try one of the following: the new apartment and its deficiencies are described, pages 80–87; Evelind shops for school uniforms, pages 48–51; Katie tells about her school, pages 124–26; Leona discusses

shopping for food and household items, pages 92–99; and Leona and Jerry meet with friends who are dissidents, pages 232–37.

When Chester Bowles was appointed Ambassador to India, relations between that country and the United States were at a low ebb. He made important changes at the Embassy, planning his schedule so that he could travel thirty percent of his time and talk with people from all econommic and social levels. He tells how conditions gradually improved between the two countries in *Ambassador's Report*, a very readable, enlightening book. Mr. Bowles also took his family with him and his teenage daughter, Cynthia, describes some of her experiences in an Indian school, her activities, and friends in *At Home in India*. Although *A Peking Diary* by Lois Fisher lacks the warmth of the Schecter book, it does give a good picture of the customs and manners of the Chinese people during the 1970s when the author's husband was assigned there. When Gwen Harold went to visit her aunt in Washington, D.C., she had no idea that this would lead to marriage with Hidenari Terasaki, the private secretary of the Ambassador from Japan. Hidenari was assigned to several countries in the early years of their marriage but in 1941 they returned to the United States. After the bombing of Pearl Harbor they had to return to Japan and her story, *Bridge to the Sun*, includes the war years there also. The Schecters refer to the labor camps to which enemies of the state are sent. Some readers may be introduced to *One Day in the Life of Ivan Denisovich* in which Alexandr Solzhenitsyn tells in detail the experiences of a prisoner in such a camp.

SCHMITT, GLADYS

Rembrandt

1961. Random House.

Harmen Gerritszoon added "van Ryn" to his name to distinguish his mill on the Rhine from many others owned by other Harmens and Gerrits in the city of Leyden in Holland. Because Rembrandt, the youngest of the family's four children, appeared to be talented, he received the best education. After a short time at the university, he quit and his father paid a fee so that he might become an apprentice to a local artist with whom Rembrandt stayed for about three years. He then left for Amsterdam to study under another teacher. From this teacher Rembrandt did learn etching, but he felt stifled by this man's attitude toward his painting. However, while he was there, he made some valuable friends, among them Dr. Tulp. After a few months he returned to Leyden to set up his own studio. He had confidence in his ability and was sure he was a second Michelangelo. One day Constantyn Huyghens, private secretary to Prince Frederik Hendrik, came to Leyden to visit and rest. Desirous of giving the prince a gift on his return, he inquired at the studio of Rembrandt's former teacher and was sent to the young man's studio. There he

made a purchase which eventually would bring many commissions to the young artist. Rembrandt occasionally took some of his paintings and etchings to Amsterdam where an art dealer, Hendrik Uylenburgh, sold many for him. After his father died and his brother Adriaen took over the mill, Rembrandt moved his studio to Amsterdam. Dr. Tulp was able to obtain an important commission for Rembrandt—to paint a Regents' piece for the Surgeons' Guild. The outstanding success of this painting, "The Anatomy Lesson of Doctor Tulp," brought the young artist more commissions for portraits than he could handle. Rembrandt had three major faults: he spent money too freely, he had a bad temper, and he was often intolerant of other people's ideas. Although "Night Watch" is considered one of his masterpieces, it was a disappointment to the military company which had ordered it because some of the faces were almost obliterated by something in the foreground. As a result, Rembrandt's popularity declined just when he needed more money than ever. He had fallen in love with and married the beautiful but delicate Saskia, Uylenburgh's well-to-do cousin. They had bought a large home and begun to furnish it elaborately. The artist was never able to pay for the house and at times he even failed to pay the interest on the mortgage. Saskia had four children, three of whom died in infancy. The fourth, a beautiful little boy named Titus, survived but Saskia died shortly after his birth. It was difficult for Rembrandt to take care of the baby properly and paint for long hours. He had trouble with the servants until he settled upon Hendrikje Stoffels, a very capable, loving girl who eventually became his mistress. At last the day arrived when the mortgage was foreclosed and Rembrandt, Holland's greatest painter, had to go through bankruptcy. In spite of some important commissions that Dr. Tulp and Jan Six, a wealthy patron, obtained for him, Rembrandt never recovered financially.

This is a very long, detailed, biographical novel in which the reader learns a great deal about painting. Sympathy is with Rembrandt, even when the reader sees the mistakes the painter is making. Rembrandt came from a relatively poor family. They did own their own home and mill but still had to scrimp to get the money for Rembrandt's education and training. He was not a refined person, although he picked up some gentlemanly manners from his friends and from his wife. Many of the people whose portraits he painted bored him and he was rude to them. He insulted an important member of the Muiden Circle and although the reader may agree with Rembrandt, he can see it was not an intelligent move. Rembrandt painted many pictures of biblical characters; it is interesting to learn where he got the models and the inspiration for some of them. There are two love stories in the book which some young people will find touching. The author has vividly drawn her characters.

For a book talk the speaker might use Rembrandt's getting his first commission just before he moved to Amsterdam, pages 151–55.

Saskia's uncle, Pastor Sylvius, talks with Rembrandt about Saskia before they are married and reminds him of her immaturity, pages 219–21. Although the artist agrees at the time, after several years of marriage he reprimands her one day for her slovenly housekeeping, pages 299–305.

The young person who enjoys the Schmitt book should certainly be introduced to *Rembrandt's House* by Anthony Bailey. The reader will find in it much about Holland, Amsterdam, Rembrandt, and his friends that Schmitt does not include in her book. *The Agony and the Ecstacy* by Irving Stone can also be suggested. Michelangelo's family strenuously disapproved of his becoming an artist but Ghirlandaio was so impressed with the boy's talent that he paid for the privilege of teaching him. Although Michelangelo found that he liked sculpturing much better than painting, he accepted some important commissions at the height of his career and did some tremendous works. It will be interesting for young people to compare the two artists. Stone also wrote a biographical novel about Vincent van Gogh entitled *Lust for Life.* Vincent tried several occupations before he decided to learn to draw and paint and failed at all of them. His brother Theo supported him while he tried to teach himself to become an artist. In ten years van Gogh produced a prodigious number of sketches and paintings. Both Theo and Vincent died before van Gogh was really recognized as a great artist. The biography, *Renoir, My Father,* which Jean Renoir has written of his parent, Pierre Auguste, is a tender, detailed, touching tribute to the great French painter. He has made the members of the Renoir household and the artist's many friends come alive and his descriptions of various sections of France and of Paris are so well done that the reader sees them clearly. He has used a conversational style so that the reader feels as though the author is chatting informally with him.

SELINKO, ANNEMARIE

Désirée

1953. Morrow.

Through the diary of Napoleon's first sweetheart, Eugenie Désirée Clary, daughter of a Marseilles silk merchant, the career of Napoleon is reviewed. Until his death, she was an influence in his life whenever a crisis arose. One sees Napoleon through her eyes, first as the little general, a penniless Corsican with an unshakable faith in his star of destiny, and then as the man she loved but who found alliance with the glamorous Josephine more useful to his career. Ultimately, Désirée fell in love again; this time with Bernadotte, one of Napoleon's marshals who became crown prince of Sweden and founder of the present ruling line. As Marshal Bernadotte's wife, Désirée became a member of Napoleon's court. There, to her distaste, she witnessed the power Napoleon's victories brought to him and his

family. She observed as well Napoleon's departure from his belief in the rights of man. After Bernadotte accepted the throne of Sweden, Napoleon attacked that country, and ironically it was Bernadotte's brilliance as a military strategist which brought about the French leader's defeat. True to her role, Désirée went to Napoleon to accept his surrender. Although she played an important part in the events of her time, she never lost her respect for the good things of life. She was an ardent and loyal little person, without much education in books or manners and rather stubbornly determined to be wanted for herself alone in whichever court her presence was demanded.

This is a realistic and excellent picture of the period with its loose living and extravagant ways and of Napoleon with his extreme family loyalty and his strange ideas of grandeur and conquest. Although the book is long, older girls like it very much.

Episodes beginning on pages 30 and 49 lend themselves to book talks. In the first Désirée has her first kiss, and in the second she becomes engaged.

Anyone who enjoyed *Désirée* will also like *The Last Love* by Thomas Costain. Betsy Balcombe was fourteen when Napoleon was brought as a prisoner of the English to the island of St. Helena. Until quarters were prepared for him, he lived on the Balcombe grounds and he and Betsy became fast friends. As she grew up, a deep feeling developed between the two. The reader learns a great deal about Napoleon's life as he tells Betsy about his childhood and his later years. R. F. Delderfield in *Seven Men of Gascony* presents the later years of Napoleon from the viewpoint of Sergeant Jean Ticquet and the six young men he took under his wing in the Grand Army. The reader follows them in battles and on marches from Austria to Portugal, from Germany to Moscow and back again, and finally to Waterloo. One by one they are killed and at the end only Gabriel, the artist, remains.

SETON, ANYA

Katherine

1954. Houghton.

At the marriageable age of fifteen Katherine, beautiful orphaned daughter of Sir Payn de Roet of the Netherlands, left the convent at Sheppey which had sheltered her for the past five years on the English Queen's orders and was taken to Windsor where her older sister Philippa was one of the Queen's ladies. At dinner on the first evening at court she met Geoffrey Chaucer, her sister's fiancé and was noticed by Sir Hugh Swynford, one of the Duke of Lancaster's men. Hugh, homely, rough, and burly, was known as the Battling Saxon Ram. Katherine's first meeting with the Duke of Lancaster came about when he rescued her from Hugh's unwelcome advances. To regain the Duke's good graces Hugh said he intended to marry the

girl; Katherine had no choice, but to comply, for Hugh's was a better offer than she could ever expect to receive as a commoner without a dowry. The Duke and his Duchess Blanche attended the wedding and continued to take an interest in Katherine, since the Swynford manor was not far from Bolingbroke, the Lancasters' favorite country castle. Several years later when the plague swept England, Blanche died and Katherine accompanied the body to London as the Duke was fighting on the continent. When he returned, he admitted for the first time that Katherine attracted him. Later after her husband's death Katherine became the Duke's mistress and bore him four healthy children, although he had then married the Queen of Castile. Lancaster had fallen out of favor with the English people and during the Peasants' Revolt the first place the rebels headed for was Savoy, the Duke's beautiful home in London. Brother William, the Duke's physician, came to warn Katherine and her daughter Blanchette Swynford of their danger. In the melee Blanchette was separated from her mother and Katherine was unable to find her again. Believing that she was being punished for her sins, Katherine decided to leave the Duke. They were separated for fourteen years while she made a new life for herself at the Swynford manor. When King Richard recalled Lancaster from France, he and Katherine were married in 1396 and their children were declared legitimate. That meant that with Richard's Queen dead, Katherine became the first lady of England.

This novel seems to present an accurate picture of England in the fourteenth century, vividly recreating the pageantry of that era. Girls will enjoy it perhaps more for the love story it tells than for the historical events it details.

Katherine's first appearance at court also introduced Geoffrey Chaucer, the Duke of Lancaster, and the man who became her first husband, pages 23–35. Or the book talker may prefer pages 35–50 when Hugh is forced to ask Katherine to be his wife and she accepts.

Young people who enjoyed Seton's novel will like *Within the Hollow Crown* by Margaret Barnes, which occurs in the same period of British history and is the story of Richard II who became king at age ten. After he attained his majority, he brought years of peace and prosperity to England and found happiness with his beloved wife, Anne of Bohemia, before he met his tragic end. After a young person has read these two books Georgette Heyer's *My Lord John* should be suggested. This story begins after Anne's death and the banishment of Henry of Bolingbroke by Richard II. Heyer concentrates on Henry's four sons, Harry, Thomas, John, and Humfrey after their father overthrows Richard and becomes Henry IV. When the three oldest reached the age of fourteen, they were given prominent positions in Wales, Ireland, and northern England respectively and each handled his responsibilities with acumen and efficiency. This book is unlike the Regency novels Heyer usually wrote. After having read

these books, the readers are well prepared to go on to *The Tragedy of King Richard the Second* by William Shakespeare. They will recognize the events although the playwright used his literary license to alter historical facts somewhat.

SEVERIN, TIMOTHY

The Brendan Voyage

1978. McGraw-Hill.

The idea of the *Brendan Voyage* was born across a kitchen table in an Irish house where the Severins spend their holidays. Mrs. Severin is a specialist in medieval Spanish literature with a wide knowledge of medieval texts. Tim Severin had done considerable research in the history of exploration. Both considered Saint Brendan's account of his voyage across the sea in a leather boat to the Promised Land unusual. If the tale were true, then Irish monks had visited North America before the Norsemen and Columbus did. Tim was eager to prove that the Atlantic could be crossed in a leather craft, but such a voyage would take a great deal of preparation. The financing, the construction of the boat, the procurement of supplies and clothing, an offer of safety training and equipment, the selection of the crew, and the planning of the route were done with a minimum of difficulty and a maximum of fortunate breaks. George Molony, a good friend and sailing companion who helped with the building of the boat, and Tim's first choice of crew, functioned as sailing master. Arthur Magan, only twenty-three, who was the youngest and strongest, with years of sailing experience, became photographer. Rolf Hansen, a Norwegian dedicated to sailing, was second to Arthur in strength. The men sailed from Brandon Creek on the southwest coast of Ireland on May 17, 1976, St. Brendan's feast day. Their route took them north to the Hebrides where Edan Kenneil, who owned a charter yacht and was constantly looking for adventure, joined the crew. Because the *Brendan* could sail only with the wind coming over her stern, there were many times when they made no headway or were blown backward or sideward. This not only meant that they could not estimate a time of arrival anywhere, but also that at times they would be in great danger of colliding with rocky seacoasts. In spite of a gale they made the bay of Tjornuvik and soon everyone on the island had heard of them. Trondur Patursson, member of a seafaring family and an artist, asked if he might join them. His family had lived at Brandarsvik (Brandan's Creek) for eighteen generations. Tim admits that his decision to add Trondur to the crew was the best of the whole trip. When the weather turned against them while they were in Reykjavik, Tim decided to winter the *Brendan* over there and try for a crossing to North America in 1977. Arthur, George, and Trondur promised to join him the next May. Thus on the most dangerous part of their voyage they were one

crewman short. Severin describes in detail the difficulties they encountered. At times it looked as though their chances of completing the voyage were very slim but eventually they made a landing on Newfoundland.

There is plenty of action in this engrossing tale. The reader is made to feel a special kinship with all the participants, which adds to the enjoyment of the story. Severin writes well and his descriptions of people, events, and places are excellent and enhanced by good color photographs. On the voyage Tim found logical explanations for many of the passages in *Navigatio Sancti Brendani Abbatis* which had seemed improbable when they had first been read. The author's comments on the *Navigatio* parallel his own adventures throughout.

The following are episodes from which a book talk can be drawn: Tim is fortunate enough to locate John O'Connell, one of the top leatherworkers who had dropped out of the business when he married, pages 43–52; the crew is caught in a trap in the Hebrides that almost wrecks the boat, pages 97–99; the crew has trouble in a storm in the Faroes, pages 121–26; another storm between Iceland and Greenland calls for courage, ingenuity, and great strength, pages 189–99.

This voyage will appeal to those who like *Kon-Tiki* by Heyerdahl. Also suggest *The Ra Expeditions* by Heyerdahl who crossed the south Atlantic in a boat of reeds, patterned after ancient Egyptian crafts. In *Tai Ki: To the Point of No Return* by Kuno Knöbl and Arno Dennig, eight men from six countries attempt to sail in a Chinese junk, such as was used in 100 AD, from Hong Kong to the California coast, then down to Mexico and Central America. They battle through thirteen typhoons, endure weeks of windless calm, and wage a losing battle with teredos before they finally have to be rescued by the United States Coast Guard short of their goal. Also see *Ice** and *The Incredible Voyage** by Tristan Jones.

SHIRER, WILLIAM L.

The Rise and Fall of the Third Reich

1960. Simon & Schuster.

On November 10, 1918, a thirty-year-old Austrian named Adolf Hitler was in a military hospital recovering from temporary blindness when word came that the Kaiser had abdicated and fled to Holland. Like millions of his fellow countrymen, Hitler could not believe that Germany had been defeated. He blamed the traitors at home for the surrender and then and there decided to commit his own career to politics. Quite by accident he became involved with the National Socialist party, which had only about forty members in 1919. Small as it was, this group represented the nucleus from which the Nazi party developed. The Depression, which was worldwide, gave Hitler the opportunity he needed. Believing that the Nazi move-

ment could do the most for them, many German industrialists paid substantial sums toward its support. By the beginning of 1931, Hitler had gathered around him a little band of fanatical, ruthless men who would help him in his final drive for control of the government. Three years later he had gained complete domination of Germany. By sheer effrontery he confused other governments until he had rearmed the country and started his program of conquest. The Allied powers took no action, being too divided and too unwilling to recognize what was happening in Germany. Hitler had published *Mein Kampf* as early as 1925. The sales were very meager; no one could possibly take seriously the ideas it promulgated. If the Allies had done so and acted, World War II might have been averted. Now it was too late. With control of Germany, Hitler began to carry out his plan. Austria, Czechoslovakia, and Poland fell to the Nazis; Denmark, Norway, and France soon followed. World War II began. At this point the author devotes about three hundred pages to descriptions of the early German victories and the eventual turn of the tide toward the Allies. With direct quotations from testimony at the Nuremberg trials, the grisly details of inhumane treatment of slave laborers and the extermination of the Jews are laid before the reader in all their horror. The account ends with the death of Hitler and the speedy fall of the Third Reich.

Boys particularly who are serious thinkers find this monumental work challenging and read it eagerly and critically, fascinated by the gullibility of the Germans and the blindness of the Allies. The balanced, objective presentation brings alive an evil regime which is almost legendary to young adults.

The following events might be considered in preparing a book talk: Hitler used the Depression to build his political party, pages 135–49; in order to consolidate his power Hitler used the burning of the Reichstag as a reason for rounding up enemies and executing them or torturing and beating them, pages 191–96; Hitler gained more power by the blood purge of June 30, 1934, pages 213–26.

Mein Kampf by Hitler outlines the author's struggle to gain power in Germany and his plan by which Germany would dominate the world. Anyone wanting additional information about Hitler should read the revised edition of Allan Bullock's very readable biography, *Hitler, a Study in Tyranny*. It includes much of the same material as the books above but has some information on Hitler's early years not included in Shirer's book. Any books on World War II or the Jews during that period can also be suggested. The librarian can also recommend *Iron Coffins* by Herbert Werner so that young people can read a history of an aspect of World War II as experienced by a German. Werner became a submariner in 1941 when he graduated from the German Naval Academy and rose to be captain of his own U-boat.

SIMAK, CLIFFORD

City

1952. Ace Books.

In eight segments this book explains the virtual disappearance of humankind from Earth and the rise of a civilization in which dogs are the leaders. Before each segment the author briefly states the opinion of several dogs on the origin of the information in each segment. One believes it has some basis in fact; another thinks it is a myth; another views it as a tale that has survived from prehistoric times. In the first segment most of the people have left the city and houses stand empty. Atomic power is supreme; food is produced by hydroponics; and city people have moved out where they can live on a piece of land large enough to give them privacy and peace. In the Webster family, illustrious for many years, the young man in each generation has gone to Mars, returning after a few years to settle down at home, then before long becoming afflicted with agoraphobia, the morbid fear of open spaces. This disease keeps Jerome Webster from going to Mars to operate on Juwain, a famous philosopher on the verge of making a momentous discovery. The next generation of Websters is responsible for giving dogs the ability to speak and read. It is at this time that the mutants are discovered. They live on the edges and seldom show themselves. One named Joe has an uncanny ability to fix anything mechanical. He has also observed the industry of ants and has provided one hill with protective covering and heat so that the ants' development can be continual, no longer stopping and starting over again with the seasons. Humans have explored the stars and peopled some of the planets, and are trying to explore Jupiter. Because of the terrific pressure and the poisonous atmosphere, they have to be converted into Lopers before they can go outside of the domes set up on the planet. Those who go out disappear. The man in charge of the operation decides to go out; then he has to force himself to return because he discovers Jupiter to be Paradise. When he carries this information back to Earth, almost everyone wants to go to Jupiter and does, leaving only about 5,000 humans on Earth. Jenkins, the robot, who has served several generations of Websters, remains at the home in North America keeping the place in order. Over the years the dogs gradually have assumed the governance of the area. They outlaw killing and gradually are able to persuade all the carnivorous animals to give it up by providing feeding stations. Some of the animals complain about having no meat, but dread of public disapproval keeps them in line. Robots now are able to reproduce, they are needed to do things that dogs, not having hands, cannot do. There are a few people around, and over the centuries the dogs have come to call them websters, a name taken from the stories Jenkins has told of the Webster family. One day a boy discovers how

to make a bow and arrow and accidently kills a robin. Jenkins decides that the websters will have to be taken away; otherwise they will spoil the civilization the dogs are gradually developing. He finds another land for them. As time passes, the dogs find out that a building which has been growing and growing is under the direction of ants who have enlisted robots to do the actual work. Eventually this building will cover the entire earth, and there will be no room for anything else. Because killing is outlawed and there is no other way to stop the ants, the animals ultimately will be lost.

Simak says he wrote this book because of his disillusionment with mankind after the invention and use of the atomic bomb in World War II. However, he realized too that he had to write an entertaining book and he has. He also gives the reader plenty to think about. Simak is not the only writer to feel that man has made a god out of machines and that this has tended to brutalize society.

The experience of Kent Fowler on Jupiter in segment four could be used for a good book talk.

Another story in which animals have taken over the running of a world is *Planet of the Apes* by Pierre Boulle. In this instance humans have reverted to the level of animals. In *To Your Scattered Bodies Go* most, if not all, the earth's inhabitants have died and the author, Philip Farmer, tells what happens when the people from the beginning of time are resurrected in a sort of purgatory where they are expected to reform and live pure, sinless lives which will insure their entrance into heaven. The bodies of the adults have been restored to wholeness with the vigor of young adulthood. However, they all bring their vices with them, and many are soon involved in tyranny, outlawry, perversion, murder, and other evils. Overcoming sin is a long, slow process for many, but some are gradually accomplishing it. Sir Richard Francis Burton, explorer and linguist, who dies in 1890 and Hermann Göring are among the principal characters in Farmer's story. Alvin Toffler in *Future Shock,** a nonfiction book, presents a many-faceted look at society today, the changes which are taking place, and the ways in which humankind will have to adapt if it is to survive.

SOLZHENITSYN, ALEXANDR I.

The First Circle

1968. Harper.

The First Circle of Dante's Hell is used by the author as a metaphor for the type of prison he describes in this novel. While Stalin was in power, scientific research centers were set up in which prisoners who were engineers, physicists, mathematicians, and other specialists and technicians were assembled to work on new projects. This story takes place in four days at one of these centers, Mavrino Institute, an old manor house in a Moscow suburb. Life there was luxurious compared with those the prisoners had previously experienced be-

cause here the food and accommodations were better and the discipline less rigid. However, they were required to work twelve hours a day, their mail was heavily censored, and only occasional visits with a family member were permitted. The novel's main character is Gleb Nerzhin, a mathematician who had survived the war years and a series of Russian labor camps and prisons. When he displeased Anton Yakonov, chief of operations in Mavrino, by refusing to work on a new project in cryptography, Nerzhin was put down on the list for transport, but the head of the Institute had not been informed of this fact. When he happened to be on the same subway car which Nadyo, Nerzhin's wife, had taken and she quietly pleaded for a visit, he decided to allow one because she had not seen her husband for a whole year. Solzhenitsyn tells of the persecution to which prisoners' families were subjected by officials, employers, neighbors, and even some family members because the prisoners were considered "enemies of the people." A minor character who caused some problems for the prisoners was Innokeny Volohin, a young state counselor, who led a life of luxury as a representative of the Soviet Union in various European countries. He made an anonymous telephone call to his mother's favorite doctor, telling him that if he gave certain medical information to doctors in France, he would be arrested. Innokeny was almost paralyzed by fear that the call would be traced to him. The doctor's telephone had been bugged and the taped conversation was brought to Mavrino the next day with the taped voices of five suspects. Voiceprints of the tapes eliminated three of the men. When the Major General who was head of the Special Equipment Section of the Ministry of State Security found out which two were still under suspicion, he ordered both arrested. Security organizations could think up some other crime for which the one not guilty of making the telephone call could be sentenced. The author describes in detail the indignities to which Innokeny was exposed during his first night in prison. The reader is very touched when Nerzhin was told he was being transported and he quickly had to dispose of the possessions he had accumulated while at Mavrino but would not be allowed to take with him. He also had some moving farewells with his many friends. The author ends with the thought that although the twenty prisoners being transported knew they were going to the worst possible destination, they were filled with the fearlessness of those who have lost everything.

This is a powerful book filled with amazing events and many unforgettable characters. Although the story is very long, the reader never loses interest. The spirit of many of the prisoners, in spite of their past experiences and the threat of the future, is surprising when one considers the outrages, hardships, and deprivations of their lives.

The episodes about Nadyo's visit to Nerzhin can be used for a book talk, pages 152–55, 190–93, 216–23.

Because the prisoners in *The First Circle* often refer to their lives in

the camps of the taiga, the tundra, or the mines with horror and *One Day in the Life of Ivan Denisovich* tells of that experience briefly, the latter book can be suggested as a follow-up. Another story of a prisoner in Russia may be found in *Darkness at Noon* by Arthur Koestler. Rubashov, former People's Commissar, is arrested and accused of disloyalty to the Party. In his cell he recalls several of the people with whom he had worked and who had died because they were no longer useful to him. Now he too has outlived his usefulness and will have to die after a long private questioning period and a public trial. In *The October Circle* by Robert Littell a group of Bulgarians, all well known for courageous action in the war and for their prominence in sports or the arts after the war, band together to protest Russia's invasion of Czechoslovakia in 1968 and all become nonpersons when they are arrested and eliminated. A true story entitled *MiG Pilot* by John Barron can also be recommended. Because Viktor Belenko, a well-educated and highly regarded Russian Air Force pilot, had become thoroughly disgusted with conditions in Russia, deciding that the Party was lying to the people, mismanaging the country, and that there was no hope for improvement, he flew his MiG-25 to Japan and asked for asylum in the United States. This description of life in Russia adds to the understanding of conditions depicted in the foregoing titles.

STEINBECK, JOHN

The Grapes of Wrath

1939. Viking.

Back in the thirties when the dust bowl developed in the Midwest and crops shriveled and died, farmers had to mortgage their farms to buy staples and get seed for another year. When the years following were no better, the banks began to foreclose on the mortgages. Companies bought the land from the banks and forced the families off their land. The reader follows one of these families, the Joads, as they headed for the West coast where they had heard jobs were available. Having sold their team and most of their possessions they bought a second-hand car which could be converted into a truck. Twelve members of the family and Casy, the former preacher, piled into the truck one morning with blankets, mattresses, some clothing, utensils, and a little food and headed for California with only one hundred fifty-four dollars to pay for gas, oil, and meals. Thousands of other families were doing the same, although not all were as well prepared as the Joads. They stretched their money as far as possible, even though they expected to find work immediately. In California they found that there were hundreds of men after the same jobs they wanted and the overabundance of workers had forced wages down until people were picking peaches for five cents a box and cotton for eighty cents a bag. Even with bread selling for fifteen cents a loaf and

hamburger for twenty cents a pound, the Joads could barely feed themselves and save money for gas so that they could move on. The local people looked down on the migrants, criticized them for their rags and dirt, and sent the sheriff to move the campers out of the community. There was very little understanding of the circumstances in which the migrants found themselves. The locals feared that the great numbers of strangers might organize and shove them out of their homes. For a short time the Joads stayed at a clean government camp which had modern conveniences, was protected from the town's hostile residents, and was governed by the campers. However, when work did not become available, they had to leave. At the end the family was caught in a flooded area and the story ends without their finding either work or a home. Yet the reader feels that eventually they will come through victorious because of their persistence, honesty, decency, industry, and generosity.

This is a powerful story which cannot help but make young people think and perhaps be more understanding, generous, and tolerant. The migrants were not thieves and they did not want charity. They were eager to work and people took advantage of them. Occasionally someone showed compassion, but these people often had little themselves. Steinbeck has drawn some superb characters; the mother especially is well done.

For a book talk explain why the families were on the road, having been forced off their farms and how times had been changing, pages 47–53; or use pages 60–82 when Tom and Casy reach the farm and find the family gone but meet an old neighbor, Muley Graves, who explains.

The Depression as experienced by city people was no less difficult. *One More Spring* by Robert Nathan reveals the foibles of human character and the love of mankind which some people cannot help but express. When the contents of Jared Otkar's antique shop in New York City had to be sold to pay his debts, he was left with only an antique bed and nowhere to put it. He befriended an out-of-work violinist who found a small, snug toolshed which would house the bed and themselves for the winter. Later they took in a destitute girl of the streets and a banker whose bank doors had closed. They managed to exist until spring when they scattered to find some other means of survival. *King of the Hill** by A. E. Hotchner tells of another city family's struggle for existence. Young people who want another book by Steinbeck might be introduced to *Of Mice and Men.* George Milton had looked after Lennie Small for years because he was retarded and needed a guardian. They planned to buy a few acres some day where they could raise enough to live on. When Lennie, who did not know his own strength and had accidently killed several animals by petting them too hard, unintentionally killed a girl, George really had only one way to save his friend from prison. Steinbeck also wrote *Travels with Charlie.* In a custom-made

camper and accompanied by his French poodle Charlie, he set out to see the United States again after many years abroad or on the East Coast. He does not draw any momentous conclusions about what he saw but for the most part he enjoyed the trip and was glad to get home again.

SUMNER, LLOYD

The Long Ride

1978. Stackpole.

On November 7, 1971, twenty-eight-year-old Lloyd Sumner started from Charlottesville, Virginia, to bicycle around the world. With him he took camping equipment and two hundred dollars in cash. He would have to lecture on computer art along the way to help pay expenses. He says he had no idea of the perils, the wonders, the excitement, and the deep-down satisfaction he would experience in the next four years. He enjoyed mountain-climbing and when the opportunity presented itself, he climbed. When he flew to Alaska, he learned that three members of a five-woman Japanese team had climbed Mt. Whitney two weeks earlier and had never returned. He and his fellow climbers found three bodies and carried them down to where a bush pilot could pick them up. He had two narrow escapes himself and decided that his guardian angel was keeping good watch over him. When he returned to Seattle, he took two months off to replenish his funds and energy before flying to Hawaii. Again he climbed and he also went skin diving with a friend although he was not a good swimmer. He was caught in an off-shore current and swept out to sea. Again he thought his life was ending, but a giant wave seized him and propelled him to shore, though he ripped his flesh on the coral as the wave tumbled him over it. On his next stop, New Zealand, he encountered friendly people and stunning scenery and decided this would be a good place to live. But Australia called to him and he moved on. Although the Australians speak English, they use many unfamiliar words, so Sumner had to learn their idiom to get along there. He climbed Mt. Koscuisko and also took up a new sport called canyoning, which is mountain climbing in reverse. He questioned the wisdom of cycling across Australia's deserts in late summer, but he did it by starting before daylight. Temperatures were well over a hundred degrees each day when he stopped. His account of this part of his trip is especially interesting. Eventually he reached Darwin and took off for Timor, Bali, Sumbawa, Java, and Sumatra. He tells a little about each country, its people, and its food. Then on to the Malay Peninsula. It was so hot in Thailand that the patches melted off his tires. Here he was chased by a work elephant and prayed that a tire would not give out while he was escaping. In India his experiences were bad, but he biked 1300 miles anyway. Although he was in many countries in East Africa and visited Johan-

nesburg and Capetown, that continent did not impress him much. He says maybe he had been traveling too long. His description of the British Isles and a few European countries is sketchy. The prices there really shocked him, because he had been traveling much of the time on less than two dollars a day. The cost of the entire trip was $9,915, all of which he earned along the way.

Sumner has enthusiasm, a sense of humor, and an interest in people that are heartwarming. In his narration he must have omitted many interesting adventures and people. Perhaps he should have included more of these and not have tried to describe even briefly all the areas he visited. The book will be most interesting to those who are contemplating or dreaming of long bicycle trips, but he gives little advice which will be helpful. The book is liberally illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

There are several tellable incidents for book talks. He was attacked by an emu in eastern Australia, pages 77–78. The climb up and the descent from Mt. Koscuisko, page 79; canyoning, pages 79–81; the crossing of Nullarbor, pages 95–100; his unknowing acceptance of a proposal of marriage in Java, pages 120–22; being assaulted and pursued by menacing children in Java, page 124, are also possibilities.

With a good deal of humor William Anderson tells in *The Great Bicycle Expedition* of the adventures and mishaps he and his wife and a college-age son and daughter had traveling by bicycle in Denmark, Sweden, Holland, Belgium, and France. Starting in 1973 Ted Simon took four years to travel around the world on a motorcycle, including South America in his itinerary. He tells of his experiences in *Jupiter Travels.* The guidebook for the world's longest bike trail, *Bike-Tripping Coast to Coast* by Anita Notdurft-Hopkins, begins with the bicycle itself and the equipment necessary for such a trip before giving tips about the 4,300-mile trail from coast to coast in the United States. Lloyd Sumner also made this trip, and the author quotes his evaluation of the experience and takes excerpts from the journeys of other trans-America bikers. *Bike Touring: The Sierra Club Guide to Outings on Wheels* by Raymond Bridge is an excellent guide for getting or preparing a bicycle suitable for a tour, choosing equipment and clothing, and good general information about planning the tour and traveling. Also suggest Peter Beagle's *I See by My Outfit,* an account of his trip across the United States from New York to San Francisco by motor scooter with his artist friend, Phil.

THACKERAY, WILLIAM M.

Vanity Fair

[1848]

When Amelia Sedley returned home to London after six years of "improvement" at Miss Pinkerton's Academy, she could sing, dance,

embroider, and spell as well as any seventeen-year-old girl who had ever graduated from that honored establishment. Traveling with her was a friend named Becky Sharp, whose opinion of the school was summed up in her parting act of throwing her dictionary back over the fence as the carriage drive off. Becky had been half student, half teacher because of her ability to speak the French language with a Parisian accent and because of her poverty, but Amelia had been the darling of the whole school because of her sweetness and charm and her father's money. Amelia took Becky home to visit her and treated her with every kindness. She even gave her a large collection of her own very slightly worn dresses so that Becky, on her way to being a governess in Sir Pitt Crawley's home, might have a presentable wardrobe. Becky repaid Amelia by flirting with her brother Joseph. While Becky maneuvered, Amelia renewed her life-long admiration for handsome but inconstant George Osborne, who was more interested in his own foppish appearance and his position than in any woman. Becky lost the security she might have had in Joseph, but she felt she could do better than marry George whom she had stolen from Amelia. She went to her post at the Crawley home where she soon determined to become its mistress. A little too impatient, she decided to marry Rawdon Crawley secretly, and in short time found she might have had Sir Pitt himself—a much better catch. Amelia had married George who continued to gamble and play around with society women until he was killed at the Battle of Waterloo. Then Amelia isolated herself, dwelling upon his supposed devotion until Becky pointed out his infidelity. Realizing that she had been mourning an illusion, Amelia turned to her husband's friend William Dobbin, who had long cherished the hope of winning her hand. Becky was never without a scheme for future conquests, and although at one time she sank to the point of bankruptcy, she managed to maintain herself in suitable circumstances until the end of her life.

This long, richly descriptive novel is an excellent period picture of the manners and mores of the eighteenth century and the posturings and strivings of middle-class society. Older girls who have enjoyed Dickens and the Brontës find this a fascinating glimpse of two eternal types of women: the realist schemer and the sentimental innocent.

An introduction of Amelia and Becky and a hint of their romantic problems are enough to interest mature girls in reading the story.

For other studies of human nature in novel form try *The Return of the Native* by Thomas Hardy. Eustacia Vye, a young woman who thinks only of herself, married Clym Yeobright to escape from the heath. Clym's decision not to move to Paris eventually led to his wife's accidental death. A classic example of a woman's selfishness is *Gone with the Wind* by Margaret Mitchell. Although this is often read by junior high girls, it can be introduced to older girls who missed it earlier.

THOMAS, PIRI

Down These Mean Streets

1967. Knopf.

Although the author was born in the United States, his parents were Puerto Ricans. His mother appeared to be white but his father had very dark skin and Piri resembled him. This caused trouble for the boy as a teenager. Mrs. Thomas was a warm, affectionate woman who gave her children plenty of love and attention. The father was often out of work; at those times he was short-tempered and disagreeable. Still they sometimes had fun as a family and they loved one another. Each time they moved from one neighborhood to another in Harlem, Piri had to make a place for himself in the local gang. He was said to have heart and although he was afraid inside, he appeared to be cool and would fight if he had to. At an early age he began to smoke pot and to enjoy sexual encounters. He did not like school; although his mother made him go, he did not always stay all day. During World War II when Mr. Thomas made good money in a defense plant, he moved his family to a home he bought on Long Island. This was a difficult time for Piri because most of the students at school were white and he looked like a black. He soon hated the school; after a while he quit and went back to Harlem to find a job. There he ran into racial prejudice which increased his bitterness. He began to sell pot and did quite well. One day a black friend, Brewster Johnson, told Piri that he did not know what racial prejudice really was until he encountered it in the South. The two boys decided to join the National Maritime Union and got a job on a ship that made stops in southern ports. Piri describes some of their experiences and tells how hard it was for them to hold their tempers and not explode with violence. He also acknowledged prejudice in himself toward blacks and realized that this was why he always proclaimed himself as Puerto Rican. When he returned to Harlem, he became a pusher for heroin as well as an addict. A friend helped him beat the habit by locking him in a room until he no longer had a desire for the drug. Unhappy with his menial job, he eagerly joined a Puerto Rican friend and two white fellows in a series of holdups. One of these did not go as planned; as a result Piri served six years in a federal prison. He learned a lot during those years, often the hard way. He also turned to God for help and felt his prayers were answered. When he was released, he went back to whoring, drinking, and pot. But one day when he looked in the mirror, he saw himself on the same road he had taken to prison and he did not want that. He still wanted to be somebody, and so he started on a new road.

The librarian or teacher must read this book before using it. It is full of bad language and accounts of sexual experiences, thefts, robberies, and the use of drugs and liquor. In addition there are homo-

sexual activities described. Piri is filled with indecision, bitterness, and hatred. However, the book is well worth reading. There run though this story Piri's love for his mother and his family and his desire to be somebody. He wants to accomplish his objective immediately and does not have the patience to climb toward it gradually. Therefore his efforts to reach it are usually by the wrong road. The readers understand the conflict within Piri concerning the color of his skin and the struggle for identity he is undergoing. He is fortunate to have Brewster for a friend because the latter had more or less come to terms with his blackness. He understands Piri's confusion, though it sometimes irks him.

The librarian may want to use this as a book talk in special classes. On pages 29–38 Piri describes the fight he had in an Italian neighborhood before he was able to become friends with those his own age.

The true life story of another Puerto Rican boy can be found in *Run Baby Run* by Nicky Cruz. Unable to control Nicky, his father sent him to an older son in New York City. Nicky soon left that home, joined a gang, and stole to pay his expenses. After several years of terrible gang warfare, Nicky heard David Wilkerson speak and accepted Jesus in his heart. With David's help he went to school and then entered the Pentecostal ministry. The latter part of the book tells of his working with drug addicts, prostitutes, and gang members to help them lead better lives. Not all Spanish-speaking citizens in the United States live in cities. *The Life and Death of Little Jo* by Robert Bright takes place in a small New Mexican village. Poverty, ignorance, and superstition insured that the inhabitants lived in the most primitive conditions. Little Jo, orphaned when he was probably about ten, was a talented, bright boy but was mistreated by the family which took him in. The reader feels sorry for the boy as soon as the author introduces him because everything seems to be against his chance to make something of himself. Near the end of the story, when Jo was drafted into the army during World War II, the reader wonders how Jo, with his ignorance of the English language and modern life and his naiveté, will get along in the army.

THOMPSON, THOMAS

Richie

1973. Saturday Review Pr.

When Richie was in grade school, he constantly amazed his teachers with his knowledge of animals and the out-of-doors. His information was gained from exploring Long Island with his father who loved nature. His teachers said that he had better than average ability but lacked self-discipline. He was a handsome child but plump; as a result other children often made fun of him. Although a happy

child at home, at school he was disruptive, defiant of authority, and shirked responsibility. His mother Carol was too permissive in her treatment of him and although his father George was the disciplinarian, he was a little too unsure of his own worth to impress upon his son his own worth as a human being. When Richie was in sixth grade, the family sold their home and moved to a new neighborhood and a larger house. The boy was not happy in this new home, for there were no boys nearby with whom he could be friends. Also he was still overweight. He devoted himself to books about nature subjects and by the time he was twelve he had quite a menagerie of small animals. His mother took him to visit the American Museum of Natural History where a cousin worked but she could not do it often because of the expense and distance. When he was fourteen, he slimmed down, his grades improved, and he made some friends. Through one of these, Brick Pavall, he was introduced to smoking marijuana. Although Richie was really not interested in drugs, he did want to prove that he was mature. Within a month he was smoking pot once or twice a week and enjoying it. His mother did not like Brick and insisted that Richie go to an expensive summer camp in order to get him away and keep him busy. But in a week's time the owner of the camp called and asked George to come and get the boy. From this time on Richie went from bad to worse. He lost his interest in nature. He tried one drug after another, stealing and cheating to get money for drugs. He came to hate his father for trying to help him and discipline him. George tried to get help for the boy from the police, the school, Family Court, and the Drug Abuse Council. None of these helped because Richie would not cooperate. The author goes into many details about the boy's use of drugs and the trouble he got into as a result of these substances. He was stoned a good deal of the time; his health deteriorated; he became so abusive and violent at home that shortly before he was to graduate from high school he attacked his father with sharp pointed scissors. Later, during another attack, George shot and killed him.

This is a sad, sad, true story. It is told from the father's point of view so that the reader only has a hint now and then of what motivated Richie to become so deeply involved with drugs. The author cites the United States pharmaceutical companies which manufacture such huge amounts of barbiturates and the methods by which this overproduction gets into the hands of irresponsible drug buyers outside of the United States. These operators then route their supply back into the United States and into the black market. The pharmaceutical companies are so powerful in Washington that Congress refuses to do anything to interfere with their huge profits. Thompson also discusses the spread of drug use into elementary schools.

This is the type of book which will either be shunned by young people or it will be promoted by word of mouth and be in great

demand. For this reason it is not a good book to be used in a book talk.

If a young person wants a drug user's account of his experiences, the librarian might suggest *The Eden Express* by Mark Vonnegut. This young man had been a heavy user of drugs in college and became schizophrenic. He writes vividly of his hallucinations and torments and his gradual recovery. Whether his mental state was entirely the result of his drug addition is a question. George Richardson, son of a stable black family in Newark, New Jersey, enlisted in the army at fifteen, did his stint, left the service and, when he couldn't find a steady job, joined the Air Force. He was sent to Japan where he began taking drugs and before long was mainlining heroin. In his autobiography, *Get Up, You're Not Dead,* he describes what it is like to be an addict. Rough language and many references to sexual activity characterize his book. Richardson was able to break the habit without help from any organization after his dishonorable discharge, but it was a long, hard fight. Today he has made a name for himself in society.

TOFFLER, ALVIN

Future Shock

1970. Random House.

Alvin Toffler states that his book's purpose is to help people come to terms with the many changes which will be taking place in the future. He explains that the rate of change which has occurred in the last sixty-two years is immense compared with the rate of change in the preceding 50,000 years. He foresees a future of even more numerous and more rapid changes. He believes that as the general rate of change accelerates, the economics of permanence must end because advancing technology makes it possible to improve products so quickly that we will have to discard and replace the old ones. Means of travel have increased greatly today, making us more mobile. People are able to move from one job to another easily. Mobility leads to noninvolvement and relationships of shorter duration. Because bureaucracy is unable to adapt to rapid change, ad-hocracy is taking its place. With the growth of conglomerates and many new projects, ad hoc groups have had to come into being, disrupting the established hierarchy. There has been less up and down movement in decision-making and more lateral movement. Technological advances have accelerated the rate of communication, but even so it is difficult to keep up with what is going on. A superindustrial revolution is taking place. Toffler lists cloning, new methods of reproduction, organ transplants, cyborgs, and robots as examples of the direction science is taking. He discusses experimental production and possibilities in tomorrow's world and asks whether human soci-

ety can allow simulated experience to replace real experience. The family in today's world has become fractured and there has been a collapse of the values of the past. These facts present other problems. Standardization is disappearing. People will have in the future a multiplication of choices. This leads to a surfeit and an environment so ephemeral, unfamiliar, and complex that breakdown threatens millions. This breakdown is future shock. He analyzes what influence great changes have on the body and the mind. He sees the need to design new personal and social change-regulators. The education system which has always looked to the past must be revamped. A superindustrial educational system which looks to the future is needed. Technocratic planning has failed because its range was too short and it concentrated on economics, neglecting cultural, psychological, and social forces. Toffler states that a strong new strategy called social futurism is necessary and in his final chapter he shows how this would work.

The book is very readable and demands some thought on the part of the reader. It is best read slowly and the message digested even if one does not agree with the author. There is plenty of material for discussion groups. The author's research took five years and he collected numerous interesting examples to illustrate the points he makes. Very little of what he says is dated even though the book was published in 1970.

The librarian can build a challenging book talk around the shorter examples of the rapidity of change in recent years, pages 15–18.

John Brunner acknowledges his indebtedness to Toffler's *Future Shock* for the "scenario" of his novel *The Shockwave Rider* in which a few powerful men in government gain control of the country and keep it through their use of computers. However, their plans are upset by a student in one of their special universities. He sees the dangers and eventually exposes them to the people. After defining the two waves which have occurred in the world – the first, agricultural and the second, industrial – Toffler discusses *The Third Wave* which began in the 1950s. Radical changes have been taking place; these have included among others the need for a new energy base; growth in the use of computers; rise of the space industry; use of the sea for food and materials; genetic engineering; changes in family life; and the crack-up of the nations of the world. In order to survive, he says, all nations must redesign their political structures. The book will give the present generation which will be important in the third wave much to reflect on seriously. Another thought-provoking book is *The Greening of America* by Charles A. Reich. He labels his three groupings of people Consciousness I, II, and III; discusses the mistakes Americans have made, but places considerable faith in the ability of young people to save humanity. Readers seem to feel that his arguments are less convincing than Toffler's.

TOLKIEN, J. R. R.

The Fellowship of the Ring. 2nd ed.

1965. Houghton.

Sometime before this story begins, Bilbo Baggins had had many adventures on a long journey. When he returned to his home in the Shire, he had a magic ring with him. He lived there until his one hundred and first birthday. Then he gave a huge birthday party and disappeared, leaving everything to his nephew, Frodo. As time passed, the novelty of being master of Bags End wore off and Frodo regretted that he had not gone with Bilbo. There seemed to be much movement among the Elves and Dwarves; also rumor had it that Orcs were multiplying in the mountains. Frodo sold Bags End and moved to a small house at Crickhollow. On the way to the new home with his friends Sam and Pippin, he saw a Black Rider of Mordor for the first time. At Crickhollow, Merry, another friend, told Frodo that he was going with him also. The four of them started out through Old Forest in which the trees seemed very unfriendly. At one time when they stopped to rest, Merry and Pippin leaned against an old willow and while they slept, the bark of the tree closed around the two hobbits, imprisoning them. Frantic, Frodo shouted for help; fortunately Tom Bombadil, who happened to be coming along just then, made the tree release the two friends. Tom took them home, fed them, and gave them a safe place to sleep. The next day he guided them to the road they sought. That night they stayed at the Sign of the Prancing Pony where they met a man named Strider. The landlord warned Frodo that two Black Riders were looking for him and gave him a letter in which the friendly wizard, Gandalf, told him to trust Strider. That night someone stole their ponies and from this point on they had to walk. After seven days they were attacked by Black Riders and Frodo was wounded. Henceforth he had to ride on the packhorse, while his friends carried the packs on their backs. After days in the wilderness trying to avoid their enemies they came to a road. There they met the Elf, Glorfindel, who traveled with them. When they reached the Ford of Bruinen, Glorfindel put Frodo on his horse which was able to outrun the Black Riders who lay in wait for them. Frodo passed out and when he came to, he was in bed at the house of Elrond in Rivendale and Gandalf was sitting beside his bed. Elrond was a healer and by the time the hobbits were ready to leave, Frodo was well. At a Council Meeting the whole history of the Ring was reviewed and the decision was made to destroy the Ring in the Mountains of Fire in Mordor. Frodo was determined to go on and try to do it. Elrond decided to send with him Gandalf, an elf called Legolas, a dwarf called Gimli, and the man Boromir, in addition to his companions and Strider, whose real name was Aragorn. By this time it was winter and traveling was difficult. Forced to take a road under the mountains, they met and fought Orcs for the first

time, losing Gandalf who fell when the bridge over a fiery abyss gave way. At length they reached Caras Galadon where Lord Celebron and Galadriel, the Lady of Lórien, lived. These good people provided boats by which they could travel a goodly way. Near the end of the river trip Frodo and Sam were separated from the rest of their party and went on alone.

This book has been very popular with high school and college students who enjoy fantasy. It was carefully and painstakingly written and now has been revised. The author says that some information has been provided in this edition on a few points about which early readers have had questions.

Book-talkers may want to introduce the hobbits either by using the Prologue or the book called *The Hobbit.* They could then tell about the time Old Man Willow imprisoned Merry and Pippin in his bark and Tom Bombadil rescued them, pages 127–33.

Tolkien continues this story in *The Two Towers* in which Aragorn, Legolas, and Gimli search for Merry and Pippin who have been carried off by the Orcs. On their trek they are reunited with Gandalf and later when the Ents destroy the stronghold of Sarumen, they find Merry and Pippin. Meanwhile Sam and Frodo reach the land of Mordor and have many adventures trying to find a secret entrance. At the end Frodo is captured by the Orcs of Mordor. In *The Return of the King,* after several battles and hard marching the Armies of the West gathered around the fortress of Sauron but they were sadly outnumbered. Fortunately at the right moment Frodo and Sam, after several escapes and with great difficulty, manage to reach the fires in the Mountain of Doom and the Ring is destroyed. With this deed the power of Sauron is broken and his kingdom falls. Fantasy fans disagree about *The Sword of Shannara* by Terry Brooks. Some are enthusiastic about it and others consider it too close an imitation of *The Lord of the Rings.* Shea, part Elven, and his friend Flick set out to retake the Sword of Shannara which has been captured by the Warlock Lord. There are elves, trolls, dwarfs, gnomes, skull bearers, sphinxes, and monsters, some friendly and some not, which are encountered before Shea finally wins.

TOLSTOI, LEO

Anna Karenina

[1877]

Coming from Petersburg to save her brother's marriage, Anna Karenina shared a compartment with Countess Vronsky. When they arrived in Moscow, Anna met the old lady's son, a dashing young officer. It was love at first sight. Moving in the same social circle they saw each other frequently, and before long they were deeply involved. Forgetting her duty to her husband and son, Anna abandoned herself to an affair that was soon choice gossip in both cities.

Eventually she told her husband who tried to bring her to her senses, but after the birth of her daughter, she left with Vronsky. Her husband refused to give her a divorce. Scorned by her former associates, lonely for her son, Anna finally came to doubt Vronsky's love, and in an almost deranged condition she threw herself under a train. As a contrast to and parallel with the main theme, is the story of Levin and Kitty. Kitty had refused Levin, thinking herself in love with Vronsky, but after she realized that she had lost him to Anna, she accepted Levin. He was a sensitive, perceptive person who wanted to understand man's role on earth. He was concerned about the plight of the peasants, was impatient with the bureaucracy of government, and mistrusted religion. All these doubts tortured him. His devotion to his land, his great love for his wife, and his slowly developing pride in his baby son were strengthening forces in his life. In contrast, Anna's passionate love for Vronsky was her ruin. Tolstoi, skillfully weaving his many threads together into a tapestry of Russian life, shows how Anna and Levin separately react to their environments. Step by step the author builds the novel to its logical end – Anna's suicide and Levin's understanding of himself.

For the mature high school reader interested in European history who is able to follow the intricate subplots and many characters, *Anna Karenina* is a moving and absorbing novel. Its value is twofold: a highly moral theme of inevitable punishment for sin and a picture of the times and mores of a somewhat decadent society.

Because of the leisurely way Tolstoi sets the stage for action, most episodes are too long for use in book talks. However, the scene of Kitty at the ball may be used. Her complete pleasure with her gown, her partners, and her popularity is followed quickly by her heartbreak as she watches Anna and Vronsky and realizes their love for one another, part 1, chapters 2 and 3. Before introducing this incident, give the audience some information about the main characters.

The librarian might also recommend *Doctor Zhivago* by Boris Pasternak. This is a novel about three women, Tonia, Lara, and Marina who loved Yurii Andreievich passionately and who lived with him at various times during the Russian revolution. This is a good picture of that turbulent period when the Reds and Whites were fighting for the control of the country. Another tragic story of a woman in love is found in *Tess of the D'Urbervilles* by Thomas Hardy. Tess had been seduced and raped by the wastrel son of the woman for whom she worked. The baby died and she went to work on a dairy farm where she met and fell in love with Angel Clare. After they were married, she told Angel about her earlier pregnancy. He was so shocked he left her. Later she killed the man who had caused all her trouble and was hanged for it. Some young people may be willing to tackle *War and Peace*, also by Tolstoi. Its setting is the time of the Napoleonic wars. Russia had joined with Austria

against France and had been defeated. Then to Russia's surprise Napoleon brought the war to Russian soil. Among the multitude of characters both French and Russian, real and fictional, rich and poor is lovely, young Natasha Rostov and her family.

TRUMBO, DALTON

Johnny Got His Gun

[1939]

When Joe Bonham regained consciousness, he realized that he couldn't hear and that his whole body was wrapped in bandages, but he soon lost consciousness again. The next thing he knew he was sinking and rising and episodes from his early life kept coming to mind. As time passes, the reader learns a great deal about Joe's parents, his home life, and Shale City, Colorado, where they lived. Once when he came to, he realized they were working on his left arm and at first he did not know what they were doing. When it came to him that they had cut his arm off at the shoulder, he was concerned about the ring that the girl he loved have given him to wear on that hand and remembered some of the good times they had enjoyed. When he regained consciousness after dreaming he was drowning, he discovered he had no legs. He was so frightened that he tried to yell; this was when he found out he had no jaws, tongue, palate, or roof to his mouth. He then began to reach out with the nerves of his face to try to determine how much of his face was gone. He decided that his face was gone from his throat up to above his eyes. He felt he could not live like that, yet he had no way of killing himself. One day Joe realized that his stumps had healed and the bandages were gone. He wondered how he could still be alive after all he had endured. He tried to rock his body from left to right, hoping that perhaps he could turn over and thus disconnect his breathing tube but did not have enough leverage to do it. While lying flat on one's back without being able to hear or see, one has plenty of time to think. One of the first things he pondered was why people go to war, a very telling chapter. Later he invented an ingenious method by which he could keep track of time. He also wondered where he was, America, England, or France? During the third year after he began to keep time, he was moved to a new room. That year went quickly because he had many things to figure out. Shortly after this he thought of a way to communicate with people. He knew the Morse code and with his head he began to tap out words, but for a long time no one could figure out what he was doing. On Christmas he had a new nurse and she printed with her finger on his chest each letter for "Merry Christmas." Soon after she started, he caught on to what she was doing. She was the one who discovered that his tapping was the Morse code and hurried to find someone who could decipher it. A

man came back with her and tapped on Joe's forehead, "What do you want?" Joe answered as fast as he could that he wanted to get out of the hospital and travel so he could show as many people as possible just what war can do to a human body. The man left the room and later came back with the answer. "What you ask is against regulations. Who are you?" Then Joe decided that they would not release him because they did not want people to know what war could do.

This is a powerful book which is popular with young people. It literally grabs the attention and is impossible to put down. It is so horrifying that one cannot forget it.

The book talker really needs to read at least part of the book. Because it is so special, different approaches will appeal to different people. There are paragraphs here and there that could be read to a group, such as the last paragraph in chapter 2 or the beginning of chapter 7. The book talker might prefer to use the scene where the doctors take off Joe's left arm at the beginning of chapter 3 or where he discovers that he has no legs and no face in chapter 5.

To anyone wanting other books against war suggest *Born on the Fourth of July* by Ron Kovic, a book about the war in Vietnam and its aftermath for Ron that certainly points out the futility of war. Kovic's experiences at boot camp and in Vietnam were brutal but when he came home paralyzed from the waist down, he found conditions in the Veterans' Administration hospital in the Bronx also unbelievably bad. He joined American Veterans Against the War so that he could speak out. He is bitter and seems unable to adjust to his handicap. The first part of *And No Birds Sang*, which tells of Farley Mowat's experiences in World War II, is lightened by his sense of humor. In the last part of his narrative there is no question about his abhorrence of war as he describes the senseless slaughter which the Canadian soldiers faced in Italy. *Friendly Fire* by C. D. B. Bryan exposes the horrors that war inflicts on the military who take part in it and to the civilians who remain at home. Specifically it is the war in Vietnam which many feel was immoral because the United States should never have been involved in it.

TUCHMAN, BARBARA

Guns of August

1962. Macmillan.

Dateline—August 4, 1914: German troops marched into Belgium, and the guns of August set off a conflagration that was to sweep around the world. This war had been in preparation for years, and it was not secret that Germany meant to invade France, intending to concentrate her troops on the right wing and swinging through Belgium, to catch the French from behind. The French, on the other

hand, planned to break through into Germany with their center and left lines and sever the German right wing from its base, thus winning a smashing victory. France's belief in her ultimate success was strengthened by agreements with England and Russia, but neither ally was ready when August 1914 arrived. Germany was thrown off balance by unexpected resistance from the Belgians, who, despite unpreparedness, stood their ground and fought at Liége, gateway to Belgium. The rigidly planned German timetable was delayed, and the Belgians paid the penalty. The French lines ran into surprisingly strong German defenses, and that part of their army would have been wiped out if the Germans had carried out their original plan. The Russians attacked on the Eastern front before they had worked out their supply lines. In spite of this they forced the Germans to retreat, and the German general asked Headquarters for help. In order to save the situation Von Moltke transferred two whole corps from the Western Front, thus weakening that front. The help was not actually needed because the Russian ammunition had given out. Half starved and exhausted, the Russian soldiers pulled back. Indecision, unpreparedness, and flagrant errors made a calamity of the first thirty days of the war on all fronts and forecast the senseless destruction of men and material which was to follow.

The mature young adult who enjoys history appreciates this intensive, documented study of the background and early weeks of World War I. The participants are drawn objectively, and the story is told with authority and a dramatic flair. Much of the book reads like a novel, and superior students find it stimulating and revealing.

A book talk might outline the German and French plans and show how the French expected their *elan vital* to carry them to victory, chapters 2 and 3. Chapter 17 pictures the senseless brutality and tragic waste involved in the destruction of Louvain.

For an even more personal view of the war suggest *All Quiet on the Western Front* by Erich Maria Remarque. Nineteen-year-old Paul Baumer and his friends in the front line of the German army during World War I have to face terror, hunger, shellfire, sickness, mutilation, and death. One by one the boys are killed. In January 1917 British Naval Intelligence picked up a long coded message which was of vital importance in the outcome of World War I. The United States was still neutral and the allies had fought almost to a standstill. The message had been sent from the German Foreign Secretary to the German ambassador in Washington, D.C. It proposed an alliance with Mexico and Japan, both of whom had grievances against the United States. Did British Intelligence dare to make use of the telegram to bring the United States into the war? If it did not Europe might collapse beyond recovery. The story told in *The Zimmermann Telegram* is full of suspense as the author Tuchman builds to a climax.

Fathers and Sons
[1867]

As the story opens in Russia in 1859 Arcadii Kirsanov who has been at the University of St. Petersburg for four years has just returned home and has brought with him his good friend, Bazarov. Arcadii's mother is dead and his father has tried very hard to be a good companion to him and to be agreeable with the boy's friends. His father's brother, Pavel, also lives at Maryino, the family estate. He is older and much better looking than his brother and has elegant manners and apparel. When Bazarov is alone with his friend, he makes fun of Pavel, but professes to like Nicholai, Arcadii's father. Bazarov is a nihilist believing in nothing and before long he and Pavel get into arguments. Bazarov is arrogant and rude when Pavel questions him and in private Arcadii reproves his friend for offending his uncle, but Bazarov maintains that both Pavel and Nicholai are has-beens wasting their time on romantic ideas. Soon the young men go to town to call on a Kirsanov relative and make some new acquaintances. Among them is Anna, a young widow who invites them to visit at her home which is near Maryino. Both men are intrigued by Anna and although Bazarov knows his parents are eager to see him, he puts off going home; he and Arcadii go to visit her. Because she treats Arcadii like a younger brother, he seeks out her younger sister, Katya, for companionship while Anna contrives to draw Bazarov into private conversations. Eventually she forces him to admit he is madly in love with her but holds him off, deciding that she prefers tranquility to tempestuous love. Bazarov and Arcadii leave the next day to visit Bazarov's parents who are so delighted to see their son that they soon bore him with their attentions. Arcadii likes his friend's parents and the two young men quarrel, with Bazarov accusing Arcadii of being just like his Uncle Pavel. In a few days they return to Maryino and on this visit Pavel challenges Bazarov to a duel with pistols. Bazarov is not hurt, but Pavel receives a superficial wound. Bazarov returns home to help his father who is still doctoring peasants even though he has retired. Arcadii goes back to visit Anna and Katya, eventually asking Katya to marry him. After a quiet wedding the young couple go to live at Maryino where Arcadii becomes a happy and successful farmer and straightens out some of the matters that have been plaguing his father. When Bazarov helps with an autopsy on a peasant who had died of the plague, he becomes infected and consents to have the last rites before he dies. In the end both rebels gave in to the ways of their parents.

This is a Russian classic which is easier to read than many. The characters are more easily identified and the events are less complicated than in some Russian novels. Young people can easily see

themselves in the young men who are rebelling against their parents. Arcadii admired Bazarov and seemed to accept some of his ideas, but his fondness for the family and his good nature kept him from getting too radical. Bazarov was obviously a mixed-up young man, very intelligent, and not as dedicated to nihilism as he liked to think.

There is little action in the story and the conversations do not lend themselves to book talks. The librarian can introduce the book individually to mature readers who want to broaden their reading background.

Although Turgenev was chiefly known as a novelist, he also wrote good plays. His masterpiece, *A Month in the Country*, adapted by Emlyn Williams, becomes rather a comedy of errors when several of the family, servants, and guests fall in love but those they love find someone else attractive. The librarian might also suggest other Russian authors and the follow-ups listed under them. See *Crime and Punishment** by Fyodor Dostoevsky and *Anna Karenina** by Leo Tolstoi.

VIDAL, GORE

1876: A Novel

1976. Random House.

Charles Schermerhorn Schuyler had been absent from the United States for almost fifty years, having been sent to Antwerp on a diplomatic mission by President Van Buren in 1837. Later he was an American consul in Italy. He married a Swiss woman and they had one child named Emma who grew up to marry Prince d'Agrigente. The Prince had died five years before Emma and her father came to the United States. The Panic of 1873 had wiped out Schuyler's capital and when the Prince died, they learned that his debts had taken most of his assets. Emma's and Schuyler's purpose in coming to America was to find a wealthy husband for Emma and to secure another Presidential appointment for her father. For years Schuyler had contributed to various magazines and newspapers in this country and England, and had written several popular books of history. As they had little to live on, it was important that he get journalistic or literary assignments immediately. Emma had met John Apgar who had been at the American Embassy in Paris for a year. He came from a good family, was a bachelor, was practicing law in New York City, and was definitely interested in Emma. William Cullen Bryant, editor of the *Evening Post*, asked Schuyler to cover the Centennial Exhibition when it opened in Philadelphia in May or June. Young Jamie Bennett, publisher of the New York *Herald*, offered him assignments in Washington and at the nominating convention. Because Emma's beauty and title made her instantly popular, her social calendar and that of her father were crowded with luncheon, dinner, theater, tea, and ball invitations from the socially elite. Samuel

Tilden, governor of New York, was running on the Democratic ticket to replace Ulysses S. Grant as President. The Republicans were having a difficult time deciding on the candidate to run on their ticket. There had been so much scandal in New York City in connection with Tammany hall and Boss Tweed and in Washington with corruption at the national level, that they had to find someone with an umblemished reputation. Because he had been promised a lucrative appointment to France, Schuyler was working for Tilden. When Emma met John Apgar's huge family, Schuyler began to wonder if she could possibly want to tie herself to them, but she assured him that she would. However, she found several excuses to postpone the date of their marriage and eventually married someone else. Although this alliance shocked and surprised her father, he knew he would no longer have to worry about her future. Schuyler, who was a heavy eater and drinker, knew that his health was not good. His was quite a strenuous life because of the various stories he had to cover and because of his many social engagements. At the end of the book Bryant, who was about twenty years his senior, announced Schuyler's death.

Vidal writes extremely well and many of his characters seen through Schuyler's eyes come alive. It appears that corruption was much worse in the 1870s than it is today and young people can feel somewhat encouraged that the United States has made some progress in that respect. The author's graphic description of conditions of the poor in the city after the Civil War, the Panic, and his exposure of the corruption are enlightening to those with little idea about the history of that period. Those readers interested in American history will find the book fascinating.

Pages 16–24 describe the Schuylers' arrival in New York when their ship was met by John Apgar. His carriage took them to their hotel. Things had changed in fifty years and there are several humorous sights or events which would amuse an audience. In the hotel when they are conducted to their suite, they saw a perpendicular railway (an elevator) for the first time. Beginning on page 50 the reader gets some idea of New York society and its snobbishness and customs.

The Age of Innocence by Edith Wharton, another novel of the same period but without the historical background, also describes New York's high society with its very rigid rules of conduct. What was young Newland Archer to do when he found he had fallen in love with his wife's cousin Ellen who had left her husband, a Polish nobleman? It was Ellen who saved him from disgracing himself and his family by refusing to run away with him. Young people can also be introduced to *The Gilded Age* which gives a plebian view of the period in which Vidal's story takes place. Basing their novel on some actual events and some real people and using biting satire at times and at others hilarious irony or a bit of burlesque, Mark Twain and

Charles Dudley Warner collaborated in describing the wild speculation, the corruption, fraud, scandal, and exploitation in which their characters were involved during Ulysses S. Grant's presidential terms.

WATERS, FRANK

The Man Who Killed the Deer

1942, 1970. Swallow Pr.

When Martiniano was a boy, the government agent chose him to go away from the reservation to school. Neither he nor his father nor the chief of the kiva he was about to enter thought he should go, but there was no choice. Six years later, having learned to be a carpenter, he returned home, built a small adobe hut on land his father had owned, and tried to make a living by farming and working at his trade. He had not cut his hair, but had adopted American dress. He refused to discard the clothing and shoes of the whites and declined to take part in the traditional ceremonies, though this meant he was fined by the Governor of the pueblo. Because of his attitude he was not allowed to use the community threshing machine and was looked upon as an outsider. Martiniano married a lovely young girl named Flowers Playing and they were very happy together. One day after he had harvested his crops, he killed a deer. Since it was two days past the end of the hunting season, he was arrested by the rangers in the National Forest Reserve. He was tried by the tribal council and by the government court and was sentenced by both. Bitter and discouraged, Martiniano decided to take the Peyote Road, the ceremony of using peyote which the author describes in some detail. For a time he felt refreshed and clean, but before long his impression began to change. One night when he was on his way to the peyote meeting, the deer he had killed stepped out of the bushes alongside the path and stopped him. He was impelled to return home. The meeting was raided by Indian officials and those in attendance were punished. The blankets of the absent ones were confiscated; anyone who wanted his returned would have to admit his guilt. Martiniano was not ready for that. Later he cleared sage from a piece of land in the foothills, plowed, and harrowed it, but he had no seed to plant. He went to Mr. Byers at the trading post to whom he already owed money, promising that if he had a good crop on the new land, he could pay for the seed and clear the old debt too. Byers liked Martiniano and provided the seed. Before long Martiniano decided to get his blanket back. When he confessed to having attended peyote meetings, he was sentenced to fifteen lashes. Flowers Playing came and stood in the willows where he could see her. Her face was relaxed and smiling and in her eyes he saw deep love for him. This made the lashes easier to bear. Afterward she told him she was pregnant. A good harvest also helped to give Martiniano a faith

which he had previously lacked. His resentment, bitterness, and anger began to fade away. At the time of the fiesta, when no one was able to climb the pole set up in the plaza, he volunteered. Although he climbed higher than the others, he, too, failed. This experience put an end to his terrible pride and he became more humble. The next spring when his son was born, Martiniano was happier than he had ever been. One night he went to the old men in the pueblo and offered to take part in the next day's traditional events. He had finally made the necessary adjustments to tribal life.

This story shows development of a young man's philosophy of life and emphasizes the difficulties school Indians must overcome to adjust to reservation life when they return home. The book has depth, is sensitively written, and its characters are well drawn.

In a book talk the librarian needs to acquaint the listeners with Martiniano's problem. This has been briefly indicated in the foregoing annotation, but some details can be added from pages 1–34 and 52–58.

In *When the Legends Die* by Hal Borland, orphaned Tom Black Bull hated white people and school, but he did teach himself to ride while there. When he left, he made a name for himself as a horsekiller while riding broncos at rodeos. A bad accident and a long recovery made him realize the futility of his life, face his problems, and find a solution. In *Laughing Boy* by Oliver La Farge, another beautifully written book, a young Navajo with a very proper Indian upbringing falls in love with and marries an Indian girl with a bad reputation. Their happy plans for the future are shattered by a rejected suitor of the girl and Laughing Boy buries her with all the possessions they had acquired together. Also suggest *Ceremony* by Leslie Silko, a powerful novel concerned with the dislocation suffered by American Indians. Tayo and his cousin Rocky were captured by the Japanese in World War II. Rocky died on the death march but Tayo survived years in prison camp. After the war he returned home, broken mentally and physically. For a short time he became involved with some dissolute Indians but he broke away and went to a famous medicine man who performed a ceremony for him. Betonie told him that the rest of his rehabilitation was up to him. Tayo was able to make the comeback he desired.

WEST, JESSAMYN

The Massacre at Fall Creek

1975. Harcourt.

In February 1824, a small party of Indians had come south and set up a temporary camp not far from the little settlement of Fall Creek. They were collecting sap for maple sugar and trapping along the nearby streams. Several white men resented the nearness of the In-

 dians and showed their displeasure by continually springing the

Indians' traps. When the Indians did not leave, five men attacked the camp, killing three women, two men, and four children. At the Sunday worship service held at the Caleb Cape home, George Benson bragged about his part in the massacre and it was announced that Jud Clasby, an itinerant trapper, as well as John Wood and his son had also been among the attackers. Caleb decided he had to go to Piqua to report the massacre to Colonel Johnston, the Indian agent. Ben Cape, aged fourteen, had witnessed the attack and was sick for days afterward. Later Lute Bemis, who had been a hellion before he met and married Ora, confessed that he also had been involved. The settlers were upset and fearful that the other members of the tribe would retaliate, but Colonel Johnston promised the Indians that the killers would be brought to trial and hanged. The federal government paid for three of the best lawyers in Ohio to defend the men, but the prosecution lawyers were even better known. Nobody took the trial seriously except Caleb Cape and the court. After all, settlers had been killing Indians for generations. Most of the story concerns the trial and the hanging of three of the men. The governor pardoned young John on the gallows and Jud Clasby was never found and arrested. There are two love stories included. Lute and Ora had not been married very long and Ora was pregnant. Their devotion to one another is touching and their love scenes poignant, though earthy. The other love affair was between Caleb Cape's seventeen-year-old daughter Hannah and the youngest defense attorney, Charlie Fort. They were so badly smitten they could not control themselves; and there are several occasions when they have sexual relations before they are married. This episode from America's early history is one of the rare instances in which whites were punished for the atrocities they committed against the Indians.

This is a powerful book with an exceptional cast of well-drawn characters. The author probes deeply into the hearts and minds of several important participants finding the gold and the dross in human character; she also points up the differences in outlook between the whites and the Indians.

The events of the Sunday when the massacre was disclosed can be woven into a book talk, pages 44–58.

Also suggest *The Camp Grant Massacre* by Elliot Arnold in which a band of Apache Indians who desired peace with the whites placed themselves under the protection of the army stationed at Camp Grant. Nevertheless their camp was attacked by a group of Mexicans, Papago Indians, and whites led by two influential men from Tucson. About a hundred women and children were killed and twenty-seven children were carried off to be sold as slaves. Their murderers were never punished by law for the crime they committed. Also see *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee** by Dee Brown and *Custer Died for Your Sins** by Vine Deloria for other books on Indians and whites.

Ethan Frome

1911. Scribner.

Mattie Silver's was the only happy face, the only hope in Ethan Frome's life. For years his wife's fretfulness and ill health had made his existence one long, lonely misery. Illness was something Ethan could understand and accept, but he was baffled by Zeena's ailment, supposedly brought on by caring for Ethan's dying mother. No doctor could pinpoint the trouble, and no amount of patent medicine seemed to quiet her continual complaining. It was evident that Zeena enjoyed her "sickliness" as a means of keeping Ethan close to her, if only through pity. Love was something he had never felt for his wife. Loneliness and gratitude for her help during his mother's decline had made marriage appear proper and charitable. The absence of love might not have mattered so much if Ethan had never met Mattie, Zeena's cousin. Destitute and alone, the young woman had been grateful to come to the Fromes' New England farm when Zeena's doctor suggested that she needed help with the housework. What could be more perfect for a self-made invalid than a poor relation who could double as nurse and servant without pay! As the months passed, however, Zeena began to realize her mistake. She saw that the innocent, winsome Mattie was a ray of joy in Ethan's barren life. Fresh and sweet, she was the kind of girl Ethan could have married for love, had he not been trapped by circumstances years before. The shy mutual admiration between Mattie and Ethan grew almost against their wills. When Zeena suddenly arranged to replace Mattie with a hired girl, Ethan thought seriously of leaving with Mattie, but the shame of deserting his wife in the middle of winter forced him to abandon the idea. Driven to desperation by their impending separation, Mattie and Ethan decided to die rather than live apart and attempted a double suicide by means of a dangerous sled ride down a tree-studded slope. Down they coasted, faster and faster, until a blinding crash against a large elm ended the descent, leaving the couple seriously injured. Twenty-four years later, a snowbound stranger who had heard bits and pieces of Ethan's story was driven to seek shelter from a storm in the Frome farmhouse and discovered Zeena, then an old woman, caring for an ugly, shriveled hag – the once lovable Mattie. Disfigured and lamed, Ethan had been forced to bear the double burden of his spiteful wife and the crippled girl whom he had loved.

A tense, psychological tale, this is a special favorite with girls who like sad love stories. The tragic, surprise ending is reminiscent of many O. Henry stories.

A description of Ethan as the narrator first saw him plus the few facts that the man learned about the smash-up, together with a brief description of Zeena and of Mattie as a young girl, set the back-

ground of the story and create a suspenseful book talk without revealing the surprise ending.

Although the milieu of *The House of Mirth* by Wharton is different from that in the book just described, it is also a tragic love story. Lily Bart, raised to be an outstanding figure in high society and the wife of a wealthy man, somehow loses each opportunity of a rich marriage, and circumstances even spoil her chance to marry the relatively poor man who loves her. In *The Age of Innocence* Wharton pictures the lives of a young New York couple in high society. The young man falls in love with his wife's cousin Ellen who had made an unfortunate marriage in Europe and, forced to leave her husband, returned to the United States. Although Ellen loves Newland, she refuses to allow him to leave his wife and upset the lives of people who have been kind to her.

WILHELM, KATE

Where Late the Sweet Birds Sang

1976. Harper.

Generations of Sumners had lived in a prosperous Virginia valley and, as this story opens, the present family has reached the conclusion that economic depression, pollution, radiation, famine, disease, drought, flooding, crop failure, and shortage of many elements is bringing on such a situation that most of the global population will die. The family proposed to establish in their valley a self-contained unit which would enable them to survive. There was enough diversity in their occupations to supply them with many of the necessary skills and supplies. With government subsidy and some private capital they built a hospital and in nearby caves, they set up laboratories and storerooms. In less than six months their number was reduced by flu from 319 to 201; then David and Walt, one a biologist and the other a doctor, discovered that most of the people as well as many of the animals were no longer fertile. They decided to begin cloning animals and humans in order to produce meat for protein and people to replace their depleted numbers. After the first fetuses had grown to adulthood, the original family members learned that not only were the cloned ones mostly sterile, but also that they wanted to take over the work of the older, more experienced workers. As later generations were produced, the few normal individuals found that most of the new people were little better than robots. They learned quickly but had neither imagination nor ability to act on their own. All of the cloned individuals were sensual which resulted in a great deal of promiscuity and deviant behavior among these men and women. As the years passed, the community began to explore outside the valley for some needed supplies that were running low and had to be replaced. They found that forests were gradually taking over the cleared land outside the valley. The few cities they were able

to reach were in ruins and empty, but in them were supplies they could appropriate. Eventually a woman who became pregnant was able to conceal her condition and kept her baby isolated until he was five years old. Then the child, Mark, was discovered and taken away from her. But by that time he had learned a great deal and had proved he was not an ordinary child. The last part of the story concerns Mark and his inability to conform to clone behavior. He finally started a new colony where the new offspring would be individuals and not mass-produced.

This story gives one some reason for hope that no matter how far the world gets away from basic values, there will be some young people who will carry on the age-old traditions. Wilhelm is considered to be one of the better science fiction writers and young people enjoy her books.

There are no single incidents which would make a good book talk. The beginning of the foregoing annotation can be given in more detail by using information from pages 11–16 and 20–22.

Another science fiction story in which the younger generation disagrees with the decisions of the older people is *Rite of Passage* by Alexei Panshin. When young people on the *Ship* reached the age of fourteen, they were landed on a planet and left to fend for themselves for thirty days. If they survived the Trial, they were returned to the *Ship*. Mia Havero tells of her education, training, and experiences during her Trial which made her see the mistakes the authorities on the *Ship* were making. *The Shockwave Rider* by John Brunner is another story in which the ruling minds of a community of the future are defeated by a younger member of their society who recognizes the danger in the regime's plans. *Childhood's End* by Arthur Clarke is quite a different picture of what happens to humanity on earth. In this story, instead of saving the earth and man's achievements, the youngest generation is absorbed by the Overmind and the earth passes totally into oblivion.

WOLFE, TOM

The Right Stuff

1979. Farrar, Straus.

According to Tom Wolfe, the pilots in the United States Armed Forces are obsessed with the idea that they must possess "the right stuff" or they would be washed out. He begins with several illustrations of men who had the right stuff and ennumerates those who crashed because they did not have it. Two stories run parallel throughout this book – that of pilots at Edwards Air Force Base who were testing the latest planes off the assembly lines and trying to set new records in speed and altitude, as well as that of the seven men who became astronauts and flew the spacecraft for Project Mercury.

 Most of the flying jocks at Edwards had the motto "Flying and Drink-

ing and Drinking and Driving." Some of the astronauts had the same motto, but several felt that they were national celebrities whether they wanted to be or not and should set a good example. The Edwards pilots laughed at the astronauts, considering them on a par with the apes that had made the first flights. The astronauts would not actually be operating the ships; they were just "redundant components." There had been so many failures in the space program that the public finally said, "Our rockets always blow up and our boys always botch it." The fact that the Russians were continually putting men into space made Americans more than ever conscious of our backwardness. During the months the astronauts were training, the pilots at Edwards were setting new records, although no one paid any attention to them or their accomplishments. When Jack Kennedy became President, NASA (The National Aeronautics and Space Administration) was afraid that he might cancel the Project because of its failures. Al Shepard was elected by peer vote to be the first man in space. Glenn and Grissom were to be his back-up men. Shepard's flight, described in detail, was successful; he spent only five minutes in weightlessness but was a hero. Meanwhile Yuri Gagarin had orbited the earth. At this point Kennedy announced that the United States would put a man on the moon in 1970. Next Grissom made a short flight; then Glenn made the first orbit. His reception by the public far surpassed the honors and acclaim accorded Shepard. One by one the other astronauts orbited and made the headlines. Meanwhile faster and more versatile planes were being tested at Edwards. Finally Chuck Yeager was ready to take the NF–104 up above 100,000 feet. He got up to 108,000 feet and found that the air was so thin that the thrusters which were supposed to keep the plane's nose down were not strong enough to do it. His plane began to fall at the rate of 9,000 feet a minute, and when he was unable to regain control in the atmosphere, he had to eject. During his drop by parachute his helmet caught fire; that he survived was a miracle. If he had not had the right stuff, he would have died. The same day Yeager made that flight, the X–20 program was cancelled and all funding went to "the man on the moon project." Wolfe does not slight the ladies; his account provides plenty of information about the astronauts' wives, their activities, and their problems.

Wolfe seems to have adopted a somewhat jeering attitude toward both the flight jocks and the astronauts, but especially toward John Glenn who was very religious, articulate, and definitely right in everything he did. It did not bother Glenn at all when other people disagreed with what he felt was the right thing to do. Not only did he work harder than all the others, he did not sulk when his flight was postponed. He seems to have deserved the adulation he received. Fortunately Wolfe does not go into detail about the sexual exploits of any of the men; he only hints at them.

Shepard's flight might appeal to librarians as a book talk, pages

238–67. Or they may want to use the selection of the astronauts as an introduction to the book, pages 79–120.

In *Carrying Fire* Michael Collins takes the reader forward in the space program. In 1963 he became an astronaut and flew in both Gemini 10, noted for the space walk, and Apollo 11, famous for putting the first man on the moon. In *13: The Flight That Failed,* Henry Cooper describes in detail what happened on board the spacecraft and at the Manned Spacecraft Center near Houston when an explosion occurred in an oxygen tank aboard the spacecraft and the moon landing had to be aborted. Then the problem was to bring the astronauts safely home. This suspense-filled true story is not to be missed by anyone interested in space travel. Nor will the reader interested in space travel want to miss *Always Another Dawn* by A. Scott Crossfield and Clay Blair, Jr. Crossfield was the aeronautical research pilot for the National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics near Edwards Air Force Base in California and for North American Aviation, Inc. He tested the X–1, X–4, X–5, X–15, and Skyrocket. This account provides insight into the experiments carried on in the technical development of new planes. The engineers and technicians at North American hoped that the X–15, a rocket-powered plane, would be used for space exploration. Instead NASA decided to use the space capsule. This is quite a different picture of test pilots from the one given by Wolfe.

Subject index of main entries

Title index

The books which are fully annotated are indicated by an asterisk (*) in front of the page number on which the complete annotation begins.

Author index of follow-up titles

Composed by Precision Typographers in
Palatino on Compugraphic's Unisetter

Printed on 50-pound Antique Glatfelter,
a pH-neutral stock, and bound in
65-pound Ivory Sockeye cover stock by
the University of Chicago Printing
Department

Walker:. Doors to More Mature Reading

Other ALA Publications of Interest to Librarians and Teachers

Book Bait: Detailed Notes on Adult Books Popular with Young People, 3rd ed.

Consists of 100 carefully selected, adult fiction and nonfiction titles that appeal to young adults. Each book is summarized with detailed information adults can use in recommending it to young people.

172 pages Paper $5.00

Books on American Indians and Eskimos: A Selection Guide for Children and Young Adults

Mary Jo Lass-Woodfin, editor

Evaluates over 750 books, each of which aims to describe some aspect of the life of North American Indians and Eskimos.

254 pages Cloth $20.00

Guides to Educational Media: Films, Filmstrips, Multimedia Kits, Programmed Instruction Materials, Recordings on Discs and Tapes, Slides, Transparencies, Videotapes, 4th ed.

Margaret I. Rufsvold

Identifies and describes published nonprint catalogs that are devoted to both specific topics of interest and specific audiences. Each annotation appears in four standard parts that elicit the character of each guide: scope, arrangement, entries, and special features.

168 pages Paper $5.00

Handbook for Storytellers

Caroline Feller Bauer

Offers creative yet practical approaches to successful storytelling, from planning a single special storytime to a series of storytime programs. No other single book contains such a wealth of information and guidance for both the amateur and professional practitioner.

400 pages Cloth $15.00

Paperback Books for Young People: An Annotated Guide to Publishers and Distributors, 2nd ed.

John T. Gillespie

Leading United States and Can[illegible] lishers and their imprints are listed [illegible] tion distributors of paperbacks in [illegible] Canada as well as an annotated li[illegible] given.

232 pages Paper $9.00

AMERICAN LIBRARY ASSOCIATION
50 East Huron Street, Chicago, Illinois 60611